ISSN 2186-3644 Online ISSN 2186-361X

IRDR

Intractable & Rare Diseases Research

Volume 13, Number 1
February, 2024

IRCA BSSA

IACMHR

www.irdrjournal.com

IRDR
Intractable & Rare Diseases Research

ISSN: 2186-3644
Online ISSN: 2186-361X
CODEN: IRDRA3
Issues/Year: 4
Language: English
Publisher: IACMHR Co., Ltd.

Intractable & Rare Diseases Research is one of a series of peer-reviewed journals of the International Research and Cooperation Association for Bio & Socio-Sciences Advancement (IRCA-BSSA) Group and is published quarterly by the International Advancement Center for Medicine & Health Research Co., Ltd. (IACMHR Co., Ltd.) and supported by the IRCA-BSSA.

Intractable & Rare Diseases Research devotes to publishing the latest and most significant research in intractable and rare diseases. Articles cover all aspects of intractable and rare diseases research such as molecular biology, genetics, clinical diagnosis, prevention and treatment, epidemiology, health economics, health management, medical care system, and social science in order to encourage cooperation and exchange among scientists and clinical researchers.

Intractable & Rare Diseases Research publishes Original Articles, Brief Reports, Reviews, Policy Forum articles, Case Reports, Communications, Editorials, News, and Letters on all aspects of the field of intractable and rare diseases research. All contributions should seek to promote international collaboration.

Editorial Board

Editorial and Head Office:

Pearl City Koishikawa 603,
2-4-5 Kasuga, Bunkyo-ku,
Tokyo 112-0003, Japan
E-mail: office@irdrjournal.com
URL: www.irdrjournal.com

Intractable & Rare Diseases Research

Editorial and Head Office

Pearl City Koishikawa 603, 2-4-5 Kasuga, Bunkyo-ku,
Tokyo 112-0003, Japan

E-mail: office@irdrjournal.com
URL: www.irdrjournal.com

CONTENTS

Volume 13, Number 1, 2024

Review

1-11 **Global frailty screening tools: Review and application of frailty screening tools from 2001 to 2023.**
Yi Deng, Naomi Sato

12-22 **The use of artificial intelligence in the treatment of rare diseases: A scoping review.**
Da He, Ru Wang, Zhilin Xu, Jiangna Wang, Peipei Song, Haiyin Wang, Jinying Su

23-28 **Situs viscerum inversus and abdominal aortic aneurysm: A systematic review of a rare association.**
Paolo Ossola, Federico Mascioli, Andrea Pierre Luzzi, Lorenzo Epis, Diego Coletta

Original Article

29-35 **Systematic analysis and evaluation of chromosome aberrations in major birth defects associated with infertility.**
Fuying Lan, Zhongzhong Chen, Xiaoling Lin

36-41 **Haploinsufficiency of *NKX2-1* is likely to contribute to developmental delay involving 14q13 microdeletions.**
Osamu Machida, Haruko Sakamoto, Keiko Shimojima Yamamoto, Yuiko Hasegawa, Satoi Nii, Hidenori Okada, Kazuki Nishikawa, Shin-Ichi Sumimoto, Eriko Nishi, Nobuhiko Okamoto, Toshiyuki Yamamoto

42-50 **Role of IFITM2 in osteogenic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 mesenchymal stem cells.**
Yongtao Zhang, Xiangdong Li, Shanshan Zhang, Junfeng Li, Meilin Liu, Yanqin Lu, Jinxiang Han

51-56 **Surgical outcomes of locally advanced gastrointestinal stromal tumors after multivisceral resection: A retrospective study of 64 patients at a single institution.**
Hui Qiu, Zhen Wang, Bonan Liu, Rongze Sun, Xiuyun Tian, Chunyi Hao

Brief Report

57-62 **Emotional journey of patients with specified intractable diseases in Japan.**
Hiroyuki Tanaka, Mikiko Shimaoka

63-68 **Clinical features of extrahepatic portal vein obstruction: Myeloproliferative neoplasms eliminate hypersplenic hematologic changes in extrahepatic portal vein obstruction.**
Tetsuya Shimizu, Hiroshi Yoshida, Nobuhiko Taniai, Masato Yoshioka, Yoichi Kawano, Akira Matsushita, Junji Ueda, Takuma Iwai, Takahiro Murokawa, Takashi Ono, Akira Hamaguchi

Correspondence

69-72 **Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome: A new synonym mutation in the WAS gene.**
Yuxin Sun, Xiaomin Song, Hua Pan, Xiaoxuan Li, Lirong Sun, Liang Song, Fei Ma, Junnan Hao

Review

DOI: 10.5582/irdr.2023.01113

Global frailty screening tools: Review and application of frailty screening tools from 2001 to 2023

Yi Deng[1,*], Naomi Sato[2]

[1] Graduate School of Nursing, Hamamatsu University School of Medicine, Hamamatsu, Shizuoka, Japan;
[2] Department of Clinical Nursing, Hamamatsu University School of Medicine, Hamamatsu, Shizuoka, Japan.

SUMMARY As the aging population increases globally, health-related issues caused by frailty are gradually coming to light and have become a global health priority. Frailty leads to a significantly increased risk of falls, incapacitation, and death. Early screening leads to better prevention and management of frailty, increasing the possibility of reversing it. Developing assessment tools by incorporating disease states of older adults using effective interventions has become the most effective approach for preventing and controlling frailty. The most direct and effective tool for evaluating debilitating conditions is a frailty screening tool, but because there is no globally recognized gold standard, every country has its own scale for national use. The diversity and usefulness of the frailty screening tool has become a hot topic worldwide. In this article, we reviewed the frailty screening tool published worldwide from January 2001 to June 2023. We focused on several commonly used frailty screening tools. A systematic search was conducted using PubMed database, and the commonly used frailty screening tools were found to be translated and validated in many countries. Disease-specific scales were also selected to fit the disease. Each of the current frailty screening tools are used in different clinical situations, and therefore, the clinical practice applications of these frailty screening tools are summarized graphically to provide the most intuitive screening and reference for clinical practitioners. The frailty screening tools were categorized as (*i*) Global Frailty Screening Tools in Common; (*ii*) Frailty Screening Tools in various countries; (*iii*) Frailty Screening Tools for various diseases. As science and technology continue to advance, electronic frailty assessment tools have been developed and utilized. In the context of Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19), electronic frailty assessment tools played an important role. This review compares the currently used frailty screenings tools, with a view to enable quick selection of the appropriate scale. However, further improvement and justification of each tool is needed to guide clinical practitioners to make better decisions.

Keywords frailty, screening tools, early screening, aging, electronic frailty assessment tool

1. Introduction

Frailty is a complex clinical syndrome with multiple causes and contributing factors. Frailty leads to increased vulnerability to minor stress triggers and increased risk for adverse outcomes, such as disability, hospitalization and mortality (*1,2*). It is often manifested by a maladaptive response to stress triggers, leading to a vicious cycle toward functional decline and other serious adverse health outcomes. Frailty is characterized by diminished strength, endurance and physiological reserve across the neuromuscular, metabolic and immune systems (*3*), becomes more prevalent with age, imposing substantial burdens on patients and caregivers (*4*). Notably, old age itself does not define frailty because some patients are active despite advanced age, whereas others can have a functional decline in the absence of apparent stress factors or failure to rebound following hospitalization or illness (*5*). As a dynamic and reversible geriatric syndrome, it has become one of the important public health problems emerging around the world (*6*).

Frailty can affect anyone during all stages of life, and has a prevalence rate from 4 to 59.1% based on various demographic or socioeconomic conditions (*7*). A meta-analysis from China showed the prevalence of frailty in adults aged ≥ 5 0 years was 12-24% worldwide. Its prevalence ranged from 6-25% in adults aged 65-74 years, and an average of 10% in adults aged ≥ 85 years. Using a common frailty assessment instrument, an estimated 15% of non-institutionalized adults in the

United States are frail (*8*), and global estimates of frailty range from 3.5-27.3% (*9*). In Canada, about 25% of the population aged over 65 years are frail, and over 50% of the population aged ≥ 85 years are frail (*10*). Research has approximated that 10% of community dwelling older adults are considered frail and over 41% considered pre-frail in Canada (*11*). In Australia, frailty is estimated to range between 4.9 to 27.3%, depending on the region and the measurement instrument used, and the prevalence of pre-frailty– a "clinically silent" intermediate stage between non-frail/robust and frail ranged from 34.6 and 50.9% (*12*). Like many countries, Australia's population of older adults is rapidly increasing. It has been estimated that by 2031, 3.9 million Australians aged ≥ 65 years will be either be frail or at-risk of becoming frail (*13*). In Spain, for the community-dwelling population aged ≥ 65 years, frailty prevalence has been estimated to be 11%, and that of pre-frailty is estimated to be 35-40%. Prevalence increases with age and can reach as high as 50% in the population aged > 80 years, and is slightly higher in women than in men (*14*). Another study using physical frailty models in adults aged ≥ 50 years old from 62 countries showed that the highest prevalence of physical frailty was found in Africa (22%) and the lowest prevalence was in Europe (8%), while the pre-frailty prevalence was highest in the Americas (50%) and lowest in Europe (42%). However, using deficit accumulation models, the prevalence of frailty was found to be highest in Oceania (31%) and lowest in Europe (22%), while pre-frailty prevalence was highest in Oceania (51%) and lowest in Europe and Asia (49%). The population-level frailty prevalence among community-dwelling adults varied by age, sex, and frailty classification (*15*). This shows that frailty-related debilitation is a global problem which cannot be ignored, and the prevalence of debility varies from one debilitating assessment tool to another. However, there is no international consensus for a common definition of frailty. For that reason, many tools have been developed over the years to identify, measure and assess frailty.

2. Common global frailty screening tools

In the past decade, numerous tools have been developed to screen or assess frailty. Since the release of the "Fried Frailty Phenotype" (FP) scale by Fried *et al*. (*16*) in 2001, nearly 70 frailty scales have been developed to identify frailty with various aspects of physical, psychological, or social components. Nonetheless, each screening scale has its advantages in the disease setting for which it was developed, and the differences in the selection and application of debilitating scales are apparent and cannot be ignored. However, there is no standard assessment instrument. The most widely used measures are the FP (*16*) and the frailty index (FI), but these cannot be easily implemented in large-scale population studies or busy clinics (*17*). To assess frailty in large populations, it is important to find short-term rapid instruments that give reliable results for the risk of a negative event and to stratify older adults according to their level of frailty. In this way the most appropriate strategies can be chosen and applied to delay the functional decline associated to frailty and its consequences, such as hospitalization, institutionalization, low quality of life, and death (*18*). The common debilitation assessment scales provided by national and international literature and consensus of relevant guidelines are presented in Table 1.

2.1. Fried's Frailty Phenotype

The Fried's Frailty Phenotype (FP) tool proposed by Fried *et al*. (*16*) includes five items: unintentional weight loss (4.5 kg or more over the past year), exhaustion (self-reported), low physical activity, weakness (low grip strength), and walking speed. Individuals with two deficits were considered pre-frail, and those with three or more deficits were classified as frail. This tool is based on the biological causative theory and it is predictive of adverse clinical outcomes. Although this tool should be able to identify frailty and to predict adverse outcomes and is widely used in clinical and research settings (*19*), it requires the measurement of grip strength, which is not usually done in medical activities.

2.2. Groningen Frailty Indicator

The Groningen Frailty Indicator (GFI) (*20*) is a 15-item screening instrument to determine the level of frailty, which is available as a specialized and self-reported version. It measures the loss of functions and resources in four domains: physical (mobility functions, multiple health problems, physical fatigue, vision, hearing), cognitive (cognitive dysfunction), social (emotional isolation), and psychological (depressed mood and feelings of anxiety). The range of the GFI score is 0 to 15. Geriatric experts agreed that a score of 4 or higher represented moderate to severe frailty. Major drawbacks of most of these instruments are that they (*i*) assess frailty in specific older adult populations only (*e.g*., home-dwelling), (*ii*) do not contain a specialized and a self-assessed version, (*iii*) do not comprise of items that assess disability that could predict poor outcome, and (*iv*) do not allow for grades of frailty to be identified (*21*). The GFI (*20*) is an instrument that includes all these domains and meets the drawbacks of other instruments. The GFI is widely used in clinical practice (*i.e.*, geriatric centers, nursing homes, emergency departments, traumatology, pulmonology, rheumatology, and surgical medicine), in outpatient settings, and in clinical studies (*21*).

2.3. Frailty Index

The Frailty Index (FI) by Mitnitski *et al*. (*22*) was

Table 1. Global frailty screening tools in common

Title/Year	Country	Publishers	Items	Components	Frailty classification
Frailty Phenotype (FP) / 2001	US	Fried *et al.* (*16*)	5	It assesses physical characteristics or phenotype, which include five domains: unintentional weight loss (4.5 kg or more in the last year), exhaustion (self-reported), low physical activity, weakness (low grip strength), and walking speed.	Frailty: ≥ 3 items; pre-frailty:1~2 items; robust:0 items
Groningen Frailty Indicator (GFI) / 2001	Netherlands	Steverink *et al.* (*20*)	15	Physical (9 items), Cognitive (1 item), Social (3 items), and Psychological (2 items), for a total of 4 dimensions.	Frailty: score ≥ 4
Frailty Index (FI) / 2001	Canadian	Mitnitski *et al.* (*22*)	30~70	all the 8 frailty items and all the 3 domains (physical, psychological and social) are assessed.	Frailty: score > 0.25; pre-frailty:0.12~0.25; robust: score < 0.12
Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS) / 2005	Canadian	Rockwood *et al.* (*28*)	9	Total 9 points: each point on its scale has a visual chart and a written description of frailty to assist the classification process.	Frailty: score ≥ 5
Edmonton Frail Scale (EFS) / 2006	Canadian	Rolfson *et al.* (*29*)	11	The EFS is an 11-item scale, of which 9 items are self-reported, It is assesses nine domains of frailty (cognition, general health status, functional independence, social support, medication usage, nutrition, mood, continence, functional performance).	The following cut-offs are used to classify frailty severity: not frailty (0-5), apparently vulnerable (6-7), mildly frailty (8-9), moderately frailty (10-11) and severely frailty
The Tilburg Frailty Indicator (TFI) / 2010	Netherlands	Gobbens *et al.* (*31*)	15	The TFI is composed of 2 parts: Part A about "determinants of frailty and diseases", and Part B about the "presence of frailty" that generates a final score. Part B includes three domains (physical, psychological, and social) and 15 items.	Frailty: score ≥ 5

developed using the Canadian Study of Health and Aging (CSHA) data. It is a continuous scoring system where eight frailty items and three domains (physical, psychological, and social) are assessed. This tool evaluates the presence of health deficits (*e.g.*, comorbidities, symptoms, disabilities, and diseases). Although the Frailty Index can be used by clinicians in hospitals and in community settings and by researchers, it is not easy to use because it involves mathematical calculations (*19*). Hence, Sternberg *et al*. (*23*) had proposed this tool to plan health services.

2.4. Clinical Frailty Scale

The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS) is a clinical judgement-based frailty tool developed for the Canadian Study of Health and Aging (*24*). The CFS evaluates specific domains including comorbidity, function, and cognition to generate a frailty score ranging from 1 (very fit) to 9 (terminally ill). Various reviews have been published on frailty using the CFS tool indicating it to be a promising frailty screening tool (*25-27*). The CFS has been used in a variety of contexts around the world. Although most administered in Canada and the United Kingdom, this frailty tool is also used in Asia, South America, and other parts of Europe. The CFS is most often used in hospital settings in several inpatient and outpatient populations, particularly in geriatric e and cardiology units. The increase of its use in a variety of settings shows that researchers and clinicians value the ease and efficiency this judgement-based tool. In research, the CFS is commonly used to predict health outcomes, mostly mortality, comorbidity, functional decline, mobility, and cognitive decline (*28*).

2.5. Edmonton Frail Scale

The Edmonton Frail Scale (EFS) (*29*) is an 11-item scale, of which nine items are self-reported. It assesses nine domains of frailty (cognition, general health status, functional independence, social support, medication usage, nutrition, mood, continence, functional performance). Test results can be from 0 to 17. The participants are classified conventionally into three categories, and a higher score represents a higher degree of fragility. Severe Frail and non-frail participants were defined according to the EFS score as "no frailty" (≤ 5 points), "apparently vulnerable" ($6 \leq n \geq 11$ points), and "severe frailty" ($12 \leq n \geq 17$ points). Of note, the EFS was validated by non-specialists who had no formal training in geriatric care. The administration of the EFS questionnaire requires 3-5 min. Thus, the EFS can be a practical and clinically meaningful measure of frailty in a variety of settings. Perna *et al.* (*30*) suggested that EFS is a helpful tool to stratify the state of frailty in a group of institutionalized older individuals. As matter of fact, the EFS has been shown to be associated with several

geriatric conditions such independence, drugs assumption, mood, mental, functional and nutritional status.

2.6. Tilburg Frailty Indicator

The Tilburg Frailty Indicator (TFI) (*31*) is a self-reported scale. It was proposed in 2010, and it is regularly used in the context of community-dwelling older people. Besides, over the past years since its introduction, the TFI scale has been widely used in research and has been translated into many languages (including Italian). This tool is a self-administered questionnaire and evaluates all physical, social, and psychological domains. The Tilburg Frailty Indicator questionnaire administration requires 14 min and measures six criteria for quality on a scale of 1–10 (*32,33*). The TFI is composed of two parts, part A evaluates "determinants of frailty and diseases", and part B about the "presence of frailty" that generates a final score. Part B includes three domains (physical, psychological, and social) and a total of 15 items. A total score ≥ 5 is set as the threshold for frailty. The TFI Part B is a self-reported scale used in several countries, and it is associated with short-term disability, lower quality of life, hospitalization, and falls (*32*). The TFI needs further evaluation in larger studies (*33,34*), even though the tool has been evaluated for almost all psychometric domains and shows good validity and reliability for the PHC setting (*33,34*) and the physical items present a good predictive ability of adverse outcomes (*32*).

3. Frailty screening tools in various countries

Every country chooses a debilitation scale that is appropriate for use in its own country. Debilitation scales used in various countries are shown in Table 2. Each country also validates commonly used debilitation scales and develops a debilitation scale as required. In recent years, a Chinese self-reported frailty screening questionnaire (FSQ) based on modified Fried FP criteria was developed and validated in different settings (*35*). A Chinese version of the TFI was also developed to measure frailty among community-dwelling older adults (*36*). A 10-item Chinese frailty screening scale (CFSS-10) (*17*) was successfully developed and validated. The CFSS-10 has good validity and reliability as a quick and acculturative frailty screening scale for community-dwelling older adults in Shanghai. It might also supplement the existing frailty screening tools. In 2006, the Japanese government implemented the Long-Term Care Insurance (LTCI) system with the introduction of preventive care and the improvement of quality of care. The LTCI system uses the Kihon Checklist (KCL), a self-reported comprehensive health checklist designed by a study group from the MHLW, as a screening tool to identify community-dwelling older adults who were vulnerable to frailty (*37*). The CFS is a valid, reliable and easy-to-use tool that has been translated in several languages. A Greek version of the revised nine-scale CFS is a valid and reliable instrument for the identification of frailty in Greek population (*38*). Our academic hospital-based study used the Thai-language version of the Frailty Assessment Tool (Thai Ministry of Public Health) and the Frail Non-Disabled (FiND) questionnaire and showed that the two scales had slight to moderate agreement with Fried's Frailty Phenotype (FFP). Additionally, their predictive power was low and, thus, insufficient for frailty detection in a clinical setting. Further research in a multicenter setting of these and other assessment tools is needed to improve frailty screening in older Thai populations (*15*). In Korea, the Korean Frailty Index (KFI) and the modified KFI (mKFI) are valid instruments for frailty screening and might be useful as simple frailty screening tools to identify older adults who might benefit from comprehensive geriatric assessment and integrated, multidisciplinary geriatric care services (*39*).

4. Frailty screening tools for various diseases

Due to the complexity and specificity of the tools, a wide variety of tools are available for assessment and screening for different diseases (Table 3).

4.1. Cardiovascular diseases (CVD)

Frailty is an important prognostic factor in patients with cardiovascular diseases (CVD), and so identifying frailty in these patients might help to tailor the cardiovascular treatment to these individuals. The first step is to identify frailty. Several tools have been validated as screening methods for frailty. However, to the tools vary in complexity, nature, feasibility and the outcomes that can be predicted (*40*). An ideal frailty screening tool should (*i*) be able to accurately identify frailty, (*ii*) predict the response of frail patients to potential therapies, and (*iii*) be simple and easy to apply and have low cost (*41*). For CVD, the two most used and robust frailty assessment tools for clinicians and researchers are the Fried criteria and frailty indices (*40*). In addition to these two screening tools, other screening tools can also be used to evaluate the cardiovascular system. Kang *et al*. used the CFS for assessment of acute coronary syndrome (ACS) in older patients to predict all-cause mortality, unscheduled return visit, and in-hospital and recurrent major adverse cardiovascular events (*42*). Boxer *et al*. also found that the six-minute walk and the five-item Cardiovascular Health Study were independently predictive of mortality in older adults with heart failure, with hazard ratio (HR) 0.82 and 1.64, respectively, and these were a useful measure of frailty (*43*). However, there is no optimal assessment method for debilitating cardiovascular diseases.

4.2. Cancer

The incidence of frailty in older cancer patients is

Table 2. Frailty screening tools in various countries

US (*71*)	1) The Brief Risk Identification of Geriatric Health Tool (BRIGHT Tool); 2) Frailty Index; 3) Fried Phenotype; 4) The Gerontopole Frailty Screening Tool; 5) Groningen Frailty Index; 6) The PRISMA-7; 7) Simple Fatigue, Resistance, Ambulation, Illnesses, & Loss of Weight (FRAIL) Scale; 8) Strawbridge Questionnaire; 9) Tilburg Frailty Indicator.
UK (*72-74*)	1) The Fried Frailty Phenotype; 2) The FRAIL scale; 3) General Medical Services (GMS); 4) Short physical performance battery (SPPB); 5) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 6) The PRISMA-7; 7) The electronic Frailty Index (eFI); 8) The Frailty Index (FI).
Canada (*10,11,75*)	1) The frailty phenotype model; 2) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 3) The Edmonton Frail Scale; 4) Groningen Frailty Indicator (GFI); 5) Tilburg Frailty Indicator; 6) PRISMA 7, gait speed, hand grip strength, balance testing and Timed Up and Go; 7) A comprehensive geriatric assessment (CGA); 8) The Assessment Urgency Algorithm (AUA); 9) Seniors Fitness Test (SFT); 10) Short physical performance battery (SPPB); 11) The Tilburg Frailty Indicator (TFI); 2) the Sherbrooke Postal Questionnaire (SPQ).
French (*76*)	1) The Study of Osteoporotic Fractures (SOF) index; 2) The Fried frailty phenotype.
Italian (*77*)	1) The Italian Frailty index (IFi); 2) The Comprehensive Geriatric Assessment (CGA); 3) The AGILE; 4) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 5) The Study of Osteoporotic Fractures (SOF) index; 6) The FRAIL index; 7) The Tilburg Frailty Indicator (TFI); 8) The PRISMA-7.
Netherlands (*20,78*)	1) The 13-item RISK scale; 2) The validated 15-item Groningen Frailty Indicator (GFI); 3) The validated Maastricht Frailty Screening Tool for Hospitalized Patients (MFST-HP); 4) The PERSSILAA.
Spain (*79*)	1) Timed up and go test (TUG); 2) Short Physical Performance battery (SPPB); 3) Tilburg Frailty Indicator (TFI); 4) The Gerontopole Frailty Scale (GFS).
Japan (*80,81*)	1) The phenotype model; 2) The defcit accumulation model; 3) The Kihon Checklist (KCL); 4) Frailty screening index (FSI); 5) A Japan frailty scale (JFS).
China (*17,20,82,83*)	1) A 10-item Chinese frailty screening scale (CFSS-10); 2) The Tilburg frailty indictor (TFI); 3) A 49-item Frailty Index (FI); 4) The Fried frailty phenotype (FP); 5) A Chinese self-reported frailty screening questionnaire (FSQ); 6) The FI-35; 7) A Chinese version of the Tilburg frailty indictor (TFI); 8) A Japan frailty scale (JFS); 9) Multidisciplinary teams (MDT); 10) Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 11) FRAIL scale; 12) The Edmonton frail scale; 13) The comprehensive geriatric assessment – frailty index (CGA-FI); 14) The combined index; 15) The Chinese version of Trauma-Specific Frailty Index(C-TSFI).
Singapore (*84,85*)	1) Frail-PPS (Frail-Physical, Psychological and Social); 2) Frailty Assessment Measure (FAM); 3) Identification of seniors at-risk hospitalized patients (ISAR-HP); 4) The frailty phenotype; 5) The deficit accumulation models; 6) Asia-Pacific Clinical Practice Guidelines for the Management of Frailty (AP-CPGMF); 7) The Comprehensive Geriatric Assessment (CGA); 8) The Edmonton frail scale; 9) The Frailty Index (FI).
Denmark (*86*)	1) Fried's Phenotype (FP); 2) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS).
Greek (*38*)	1) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS).
African (*87*)	1) The Fried frailty phenotype (FFP); 2) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 3) Brief Frailty Instrument for Tanzania (B-FIT 2).
Thai (*15,88*)	1) The Thai version of the Simple Frailty Questionnaire (T- FRAIL); 2) The Thai Frailty Index (TFI); 3) The Frailty Assessment Tool of the Thai Ministry of Public Health (FATMPH); 4) The Frail Non-Disabled (FiND) questionnaire; 5) Fried's Frailty Phenotype (FFP); 6) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 7) The PRISMA-7 questionnaire; 8) The Timed Up and Go (TUG) test; 9) The Gerontopole frailty screening tool (GFST).
Korean (*39,89*)	1) The Korean Frailty Index (KFI); 2) The modified KFI (mKFI); 3) Cardiovascular Health Study (CHS); 4) Comprehensive geriatric assessment (CGA); 5) The timed up and go (TUGT) test; 6) The short physical performance battery (SPPB); 7) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 8) The Korean version of FRAIL (K-FRAIL); 9) Korean Cancer Study Group Geriatric Score (KG-7); 10) Korean Frailty Index; 11) The Korean version of the CSF (CSF-K); 12) The Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group Performance Status (ECOG PS) scale.

significantly higher than that in people of the same age (*44*). Frailty assessments can detect more health problems, prevent function deterioration, and determine the most feasible cancer. Frailty assessment is also vital in deciding if a patient would benefit from the proposed treatment. Therefore, it is necessary to assess the degree of frailty in older patients with cancer to optimize personalized care strategies (*45*). Comprehensive Geriatric Assessment (CGA) is the gold standard for detecting frailty in older patients with cancer. Since CGA is time- and resource-consuming, many alternative frailty screening tools have been developed; however, it remains unknown whether these tools are suitable for older and adult patients with cancer (*46*). Both the Geriatric 8 questionnaire (G8) and the Korean Cancer Study Group Geriatric Score (KG-7) were designed to screen for frailty in older patients with cancer. The KG-7 is a novel geriatric screening tool. Shorter screening tools can identify patients who might benefit from a full Geriatric assessment (GA) (*45*).

4.3. Nephrology

There is a correlation between kidney-like diseases and

Table 3. Frailty screening tools for various diseases

Cardiovascular disease (CVD) (*40*)	1) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 2) The Tilburg Frailty Indicator (TFI) and its mental and physical domains; 3) The six-minute walk and the five-item Cardiovascular Health Study; 4) The seven-item Cardiovascular Health Study score, the Short Physical Performance Battery (SPPB) and a 35-item frailty index; 5) CAF; 6) Modified Fried frailty criteria; 7) 4 scales used:5-item Modified Fried Criteria; 7-item expanded Modified Fried Criteria; 4-item MSSA;Five-Meter Gait Speed Test; 8) Multidimensional Geriatric Assessment; 9) Geriatric baseline examination; 10) 31-item deficit index; 11) Essential Frailty Toolset.
Cancer (*45,47,90,91*)	1) Geriatric assessment (GA); 2) The Groningen Frailty Indicator (GFI); 3) The Vulnerable Elders Survey-13 (VES-13); 4) The Geriatric 8 (G8) questionnaire; 5) The Korean Cancer Study Group Geriatric Score (KG-7); 6) Flemish version of the Triage Risk Screening Tool (fTRST); 7) The modifed frailty index score (mFI-5); 8) The frailty phenotype; 9) The accumulated deficits theories; 10) The comprehensive geriatric assessment (CGA); 11) The Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group Performance Status (ECOG PS).
Nephrology (*47,49,50,92*)	1) The Fried Phenotype; 2) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 3) The Frailty Index (FI); 4) Self-rated health (SRH); 5) The surprise question (SQ); 6) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 7) A Comprehensive Geriatric Assessment (CGA); 8) The Vulnerable Elders Survey-13 (VES-13); 9) The Geriatric 8 (G8) questionnaire.
Cirrhosis (*51,93*)	1) The Fried Frailty Index (FFI); 2) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS) and the Montreal Cognitive Assessment (MoCA); 3) The Short Physical Performance Battery (SPPB); 4) The Liver Frailty Index (LFI); 5) Timed-up-and-go test (TUG); 6) The Liver Frailty Index; 7) Combining grip strength, chair stands (CST) and balance tests; 8) The frailty phenotype; 9) Fried Frailty Criteria (FFC); 10) 6-minute walk test (6MWT); 11) Activities of Daily Living (ADL); 12) Cardiopulmonary exercise testing (CPET); 13) Gait speed; 14) Grip strength; 15) Instrumental Activities of Daily Living (IADL); 16) Karnofsky Performance Status (KPS).
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) (*56*)	1) The Fried frailty phenotype (FFP); 2) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 3) Frailty Index of Accumulative Defcits (FI-CD); 4) The Short Physical Performance Battery (SPPB).
HIV (*61,62*)	1) The gait speed (GS); 2) Timed-up-and-go test (TUGT); 3) The British Geriatric Society (BGS); 4) The Fried frailty phenotype (FFP); 5) The Short Physical Performance Battery (SPPB); 6) The VACS index; 7) The Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS); 8) Brief Frailty Instrument for Tanzania (B-FIT 2).

debilitation. There are appropriate screening tools for various types of kidney disease. Chronic kidney disease (CKD) is common in older adults. It is associated with frailty and functional limitations and has a heterogenous natural history (*47*). CKD promotes the activation of multiple pro-ageing pathways, which can lead to an early onset of frailty and increase the risks for morbidity and mortality (*48*). Therefore, we need to have early detection of chronic kidney disease through screening tools. For patients with prostate cancer, the Vulnerable Elders Survey-13 (VES-13) questionnaire is very sensitive in the population of older patients with prostate cancer, and therefore, it would be a good frailty screening tool in these patients. Although the VES-13 questionnaire had a large number of false positives, it has a high negative predictive value, which is important statistic for a good screening questionnaire. However, the G8 accurately identifies individuals among those initially detected to be frail using the VES-13 questionnaire (*49*). In addition, for dialysis patients, frailty assessments of incident dialysis patients are moderately to strongly correlated with FI. At the specified FI cutoff values, the overall CFS score (FACT-CFS) and Dialysis Morbidity and Mortality Study (DMMS) are highly sensitive measures of frailty. The CFS and FACT-CFS could be viable alternative screening tools for dialysis patients (*50*).

4.4. Cirrhosis

There is no "gold standard" for the assessment of frailty in cirrhosis. In 2019, the American Society of Transplantation Liver and Intestinal Community of Practice described the tools available for the evaluation of physical frailty in patients with cirrhosis (*51*). These tools included the Short Physical Performance Battery (SPPB), Fried Frailty Criteria (FFC), CFS, Liver Frailty Index (LFI), 6-minute walk test (6MWT), Activities of Daily Living (ADL), cardiopulmonary exercise testing (CPET), gait speed, grip strength, Instrumental Activities of Daily Living (IADL) and Karnofsky Performance Status (KPS). Each tool has its advantages or disadvantages depending upon the setting as the tools vary in the test characteristics, subjectivity, predictive validity for outcomes, reliability, responsiveness to change over time, time taken to administer, and whether specialized equipment or highly trained personnel would be required for testing. For example, the CFS is easy and quick to perform but is subjective. The FFC is lengthy and has some subjective components but is a reliable predictor of outcomes. The LFI is objective but requires specialized equipment. The SPPB is objective without the need for equipment, but includes three tests (similarly to the LFI) and requires more time than a single measure (52). Therefore, when assessing the degree of frailty in patients with cirrhosis, it is important to select the appropriate assessment tool for screening.

4.5. Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease

According to a review, the FFP and FI are the most used tools for assessing frailty in patients with stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), used both in

clinics and rehabilitation centers (*53*). The FFP has been demonstrated to predict mortality and adverse clinical outcomes in community-based patients with stable COPD and hospitalized and immunodeficient patients with advanced COPD (*54*). The SPPB is also a well-established tool for accessing lower limb functional impairment in older adults, and mortality risk in patients with stable COPD (*55*). Zhang *et al*. showed a high prevalence of frailty in older adults with stable COPD assessed using the FFP, CFS, Frail index of accumulative deficits (FI-CD), and the SPPB screening tools Frailty, as assessed by the four assessment tools was associated with poor outcomes, including 1-year acute exacerbation of COPD, hospitalization, or death. The FFP, CFS, FI-CD, and SPPB tools showed comparable performance in predicting 1-year mortality (*56*).

4.6. HIV

People living with HIV are an ageing population with a high prevalence of frailty (*57*). Frailty in people living with HIV has been identified at younger ages than in the general population (*58*), meaning there is a risk of delayed identification of frailty and at a more advanced stage, where some interventions may be less effective, resulting in greater health and social care costs (*59*). The 2019 European AIDS Clinical Society (EACS) guidelines recommended frailty screening in older people living with HIV (*60*). Frailty has increasingly become a cause for concern for caretakers who look after patients with HIV. A study by Beanland *et al*. (*61*) showed that objective measures of frailty screening (gait speed (GS) and timed-up-and-go test) are more closely associated with clinical parameters than the subjective measure of frailty screening done with the self-reported health questionnaire in people with HIV. In another follow-up study of eight years (*62*), frailty and SPPB was significantly associated with increased risk of mortality in middle-aged individuals with HIV. For people living with HIV to gain the most from frailty screening, it is essential that information regarding frailty status is shared in conjunction with a clear plan of the next steps in their care. In addition, services should prioritize the social and psychological aspects of frailty going beyond just the physical domains (*57*).

5. Electronic frailty assessment tool

Primary care screening for frailty status is recommended in clinical guidelines. But is impeded by doctor and nurse workloads and the lack of valid, easy-to-use, and time-saving screening tools (*63*). Vulnerable states can be identified automatically and at scale using electronic screening tools, thereby addressing the current situation of high workload for clinical workers. Over the last few years, COVID-19 pandemic, which is caused by severe acute respiratory distress syndrome coronavirus 2, continues to particularly affect older adults worldwide. The novel coronavirus strain was first detected in December 2019 and the World Health Organization declared the severe acute respiratory distress syndrome coronavirus 2 outbreak a pandemic on March 11, 2020 (*64*). Although the COVID-19 pandemic has disproportionately affected the older populations (*65*), it has been argued that frailty and certain comorbidities, rather than the chronological age, are the main factors influencing the clinical manifestations and pathophysiological mechanisms of COVID-19 (*66*). This makes screening for frailty particularly important. However, since COVID-19 is transmitted by the respiratory tract, an electronic screening tool fits the bill for avoiding exposure. With the continuing global spread of COVID-19, an automated FI could be a useful and efficient tool for risk stratification in hospitalized patients with COVID-19. Based on the deficit accumulation model proposed by Rockwood *et al*. (*28,67*), Clegg *et al*. (*68*) developed and validated an electronic frailty index (e-FI). The e-FI is a 36-item tool with good correlation with hospitalization, longer hospital stays, nursing home admissions, and mortality. The e-FI was associated with in-hospital mortality throughout the pandemic, and it outperformed other frailty and comorbidity measures, including the CFS, the Hospital Frailty Risk Score (HFRS), and Charlson Comorbidity Index (CCI) in discriminating short- and long-term mortality (*69*). However, the e-FI has limited application outside the UK, as the coding system (terms and codes used) is not in the format of the International Classification of Diseases version 10 (ICD-10); hence, it needs to be adapted and validated for transfer to other countries. The e-SIF automatically and instantaneously classifies frailty status in individuals aged ≥ 65 years for whom computerized clinical histories are available (*68*). The e-SIF can predict mortality, hospitalization and institutionalization, and is correlated with health resources consumption. These results suggest that the e-SIF is a valid frailty screening instrument for older adults in a primary care setting. In addition to the e-fi and e-SIF electronic screening tools, the FTA system is equally effective for frailty screening. The FTA system provides results immediately and is an advantageous alternative to traditional manual measurements. The use of the FAT score for predicting pre-frailty will help to provide early interventions to prevent individuals to progress to frailty. The FAT system provides a more convenient and comprehensive frailty screening hence, using this computerized automatic screening platform it might be possible to expand the scope of frailty prevention (*70*).

6. Conclusion

We reviewed global frailty screening tools published between 2001 and 2023. There is currently no gold standard in the Global Frailty Screening tool. Over the

past few decades, frailty screening tools have allowed for early detection and early prevention, but the number of people with debilitating conditions continues to rise globally. Frailty has severe effects on the quality of survival and health outcomes in older adults However, frailty is dynamic and reversible, and can improve or worsen over time. Early identification of frailty in older adults is therefore important for the development of interventions to slow or even reverse the progression of frailty. A summary of the frailty screening tool can help clinical staff to quickly and accurately select a suitable scale, but more work is needed to develop a globally recognized gold-standard scale to screen for frailty. A globally standardized screening tool can allow for earlier effective measures to be taken to improve health problems in older adults, to prevent progression of frailty, and to improve the quality of survival. We intend to conduct a large-scale validation of the frailty screening tools that are available.

Funding: None.

Conflict of Interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

1. Rodríguez-Mañas L, Féart C, Mann G, *et al*. Searching for an operational definition of frailty: A Delphi method based consensus statement: The frailty operative definition-consensus conference project. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2013; 68:62-67.
2. Clegg A, Young J, Iliffe S, Rikkert MO, Rockwood K. Frailty in elderly people. Lancet. 2013; 381:752-762.
3. Morley JE, Vellas B, van Kan GA, *et al*. Frailty consensus: A call to action. J Am Med Dir Assoc. 2013; 14:392-397.
4. Deng Y, Wang H, Gu K, Song P. Alzheimer's disease with frailty: Prevalence, screening, assessment, intervention strategies and challenges. Biosci Trends. 2023; 17:283-292.
5. Asakawa T, Karako T. Facing frailty: Are you ready? Biosci Trends. 2023; 17:249-251.
6. Deng Y, Zhang K, Zhu J, Hu X, Liao R. Healthy aging, early screening, and interventions for frailty in the elderly. Biosci Trends. 2023; 17:252-261.
7. Gilardi F, Capanna A, Ferraro M, Scarcella P, Marazzi MC, Palombi L, Liotta G. Frailty screening and assessment tools: A review of characteristics and use in Public Health. Ann Ig. 2018; 30:128-139.
8. Bandeen-Roche K, Seplaki CL, Huang J, Buta B, Kalyani RR, Varadhan R, Xue QL, Walston JD, Kasper JD. Frailty in Older Adults: A Nationally Representative Profile in the United States. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2015; 70:1427-1434.
9. Xue QL, Buta B, Varadhan R, *et al*. Frailty and Geriatric Syndromes. In: Satariano, WA., Maus, M., editors. Aging, Place, and Health: A Global Perspective. Burlington, MA: Jones & Bartlett Learning; 2017; pp. 191-230.
10. Muscedere J, Andrew MK, Bagshaw SM, Estabrooks C, Hogan D, Holroyd-Leduc J, Howlett S, Lahey W, Maxwell C, McNally M, Moorhouse P, Rockwood K, Rolfson D, Sinha S, Tholl B; Canadian Frailty Network (CFN). Screening for Frailty in Canada's Health Care System: A Time for Action. Can J Aging. 2016; 35:281-297.
11. Van Damme J, Neiterman E, Oremus M, Lemmon K, Stolee P. Perspectives of older adults, caregivers, and healthcare providers on frailty screening: A qualitative study. BMC Geriatr. 2020; 20:65.
12. Choi J, Ahn A, Kim S, Won CW. Global Prevalence of Physical Frailty by Fried's Criteria in Community-Dwelling Elderly With National Population-Based Surveys. J Am Med Dir Assoc. 2015; 16:548-550.
13. Archibald MM, Lawless M, Gill TK, Chehade MJ. Orthopaedic surgeons' perceptions of frailty and frailty screening. BMC Geriatr. 2020; 20:17.
14. Collard RM, Boter H, Schoevers RA, Oude Voshaar RC. Prevalence of frailty in community-dwelling older persons: A systematic review. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2012; 60:1487-1492.
15. Rattanapattanakul P, Prommaban A, Lerttrakarnnon P. Comparison of Frailty Assessment Tools for Older Thai Individuals at the Out-Patient Clinic of the Family Medicine Department. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2023; 20:4020.
16. Fried LP, Tangen CM, Walston J, Newman AB, Hirsch C, Gottdiener J, Seeman T, Tracy R, Kop WJ, Burke G, McBurnie MA; Cardiovascular Health Study Collaborative Research Group. Frailty in older adults: Evidence for a phenotype. J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci. 2001; 56:M146-56.
17. Ye B, Wang Y, Chen H, Chen Y, Yan H, Fu H, Bao Z, Gao J. Development and Validation of the Chinese Frailty Screening Scale: A Study among Community-Dwelling Older Adults in Shanghai. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2022; 19:11811.
18. Formosa V, Lorusso G, Lentini G, Terracciano E, Gentili S, Liotta G. Multidimensional Short Tools to assess frailty: A narrative review. Ann Ig. 2023; 35:21-33.
19. Dent E, Kowal P, Hoogendijk EO. Frailty measurement in research and clinical practice: A review. Eur J Intern Med. 2016; 31:3-10.
20. Steverink N, Slaets J, Schuurmans H, Van Lis M. Measuring frailty: Developing and testing the GFI (Groningen Frailty Indicator). The Gerontologist. 2001; 41:236.
21. Peters LL, Boter H, Buskens E, Slaets JP. Measurement properties of the Groningen Frailty Indicator in home-dwelling and institutionalized elderly people. J Am Med Dir Assoc. 2012; 13:546-551.
22. Mitnitski AB, Mogilner AJ, Rockwood K. Accumulation of deficits as a proxy measure of aging. ScientificWorldJournal. 2001; 1:323-336.
23. Sternberg SA, Wershof Schwartz A, Karunananthan S, Bergman H, Mark Clarfield A. The identification of frailty: A systematic literature review. J Am Geriatr Soc. 2011; 59:2129-2138.
24. Basic D, Hartwell TJ. Falls in hospital and new placement in a nursing home among older people hospitalized with acute illness. Clin Interv Aging. 2015; 10:1637-1643.
25. Basic D, Khoo A. New medical diagnoses and length of stay of acutely unwell older patients: Implications for funding models. Australas J Ageing. 2015; 34:160-165.
26. Belga S, Majumdar SR, Kahlon S, Pederson J, Lau D, Padwal RS, Forhan M, Bakal JA, McAlister FA. Comparing three different measures of frailty in medical

inpatients: Multicenter prospective cohort study examining 30-day risk of readmission or death. J Hosp Med. 2016; 11:556-562.
27. Biancari F, Ruggieri VG, Perrotti A, *et al*. European Multicenter Study on Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting (E-CABG registry): Study Protocol for a Prospective Clinical Registry and Proposal of Classification of Postoperative Complications. J Cardiothorac Surg. 2015; 10:90.
28. Rockwood K, Song X, MacKnight C, Bergman H, Hogan DB, McDowell I, Mitnitski A. A global clinical measure of fitness and frailty in elderly people. CMAJ. 2005; 173:489-495.
29. Rolfson DB, Majumdar SR, Tsuyuki RT, Tahir A, Rockwood K. Validity and reliability of the Edmonton Frail Scale. Age Ageing. 2006; 35:526-529.
30. Perna S, Francis MD, Bologna C, Moncaglieri F, Riva A, Morazzoni P, Allegrini P, Isu A, Vigo B, Guerriero F, Rondanelli M. Performance of Edmonton Frail Scale on frailty assessment: Its association with multi-dimensional geriatric conditions assessed with specific screening tools. BMC Geriatr. 2017; 17:2.
31. Gobbens RJ, van Assen MA, Luijkx KG, Wijnen-Sponselee MT, Schols JM. The Tilburg Frailty Indicator: Psychometric properties. J Am Med Dir Assoc. 2010; 11:344-355.
32. Collard RM, Boter H, Schoevers RA, Oude Voshaar RC. Prevalence of frailty in communitydwelling older persons: A systematic review. J Am Geriatr Soc 2012; 60:1487-1492.
33. Pialoux T, Goyard J, Lesourd B. Screening tools for frailty in primary health care: A systematic review. Geriatr Gerontol Int. 2012; 12:189-197.
34. Sutton JL, Gould RL, Daley S, Coulson MC, Ward EV, Butler AM, Nunn SP, Howard RJ. Psychometric properties of multicomponent tools designed to assess frailty in older adults: A systematic review. BMC Geriatr. 2016; 16:55.
35. Liu H, Shang N, Chhetri JK, Liu L, Guo W, Li P, Guo S, Ma L. A Frailty Screening Questionnaire (FSQ) to Rapidly Predict Negative Health Outcomes of Older Adults in Emergency Care Settings. J Nutr Health Aging. 2020; 24:627-633.
36. Dong L, Liu N, Tian X, Qiao X, Gobbens RJJ, Kane RL, Wang C. Reliability and validity of the Tilburg Frailty Indicator (TFI) among Chinese community-dwelling older people. Arch Gerontol Geriatr. 2017; 73:21-28.
37. Sewo Sampaio PY, Sampaio RA, Yamada M, Arai H. Systematic review of the Kihon Checklist: Is it a reliable assessment of frailty? Geriatr Gerontol Int. 2016; 16:893-902.
38. Vrettos I, Voukelatou P, Panayiotou S, Kyvetos A, Kalliakmanis A, Makrilakis K, Sfikakis PP, Niakas D. Validation of the revised 9-scale clinical frailty scale (CFS) in Greek language. BMC Geriatr. 2021; 21:393.
39. Jung HW, Kim S, Won CW. Validation of the Korean Frailty Index in community-dwelling older adults in a nationwide Korean Frailty and Aging Cohort study. Korean J Intern Med. 2021; 36:456-466.
40. Zão A, Magalhães S, Santos M. Frailty in cardiovascular disease: Screening tools. Rev Port Cardiol. 2019; 38:143-158.
41. Dent E, Kowal P, Hoogendijk EO. Frailty measurement in research and clinical practice: A review. Eur J Intern Med. 2016; 31:3-10.
42. Kang L, Zhang SY, Zhu WL, Pang HY, Zhang L, Zhu ML, Liu XH, Liu YT. Is frailty associated with short-term outcomes for elderly patients with acute coronary syndrome? J Geriatr Cardiol. 2015; 12:662-667.
43. Boxer R, Kleppinger A, Ahmad A, Annis K, Hager D, Kenny A. The 6-minute walk is associated with frailty and predicts mortality in older adults with heart failure. Congest Heart Fail. 2010; 16:208-213.
44. Mohile SG, Xian Y, Dale W, Fisher SG, Rodin M, Morrow GR, Neugut A, Hall W. Association of a cancer diagnosis with vulnerability and frailty in older Medicare beneficiaries. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2009; 101:1206-1215.
45. Zhao H, Lu X, Zheng S, Wei D, Zhao L, Wang Y, de Bock GH, Lu W. Comparison of two frailty screening tools in older patients with colorectal cancer. BMC Geriatr. 2023; 23:295.
46. Chen SY, Chou WC, Lin YC, Tsang NM, Liao KC, Lin CH, Lin JR, Ho YW, Tang WR. Performance of two frailty screening tools among patients with cancer in Taiwan. Biomed J. 2022; 45:361-369.
47. Baddour NA, Robinson-Cohen C, Lipworth L, Bian A, Stewart TG, Jhamb M, Siew ED, Abdel-Kader K. The Surprise Question and Self-Rated Health Are Useful Screens for Frailty and Disability in Older Adults with Chronic Kidney Disease. J Palliat Med. 2019; 22:1522-1529.
48. Kooman JP, van der Sande FM, Leunissen KM. Kidney disease and aging: A reciprocal relation. Exp Gerontol. 2017; 87:156-159.
49. Molina-Garrido MJ, Guillén-Ponce C. Use of geriatric assessment and screening tools of frailty in elderly patients with prostate cancer. Review. Aging Male. 2017; 20:102-109.
50. Clark DA, Khan U, Kiberd BA, Turner CC, Dixon A, Landry D, Moffatt HC, Moorhouse PA, Tennankore KK. Frailty in end-stage renal disease: Comparing patient, caregiver, and clinician perspectives. BMC Nephrol. 2017; 18:148.
51. Singh S, Taneja S, Tandon P, Bansal A, Gorsi U, Roy A, De A, Verma N, Premkumar M, Duseja A, Dhiman RK, Singh V. A Comparison of Different Frailty Scores and Impact of Frailty on Outcome in Patients With Cirrhosis. J Clin Exp Hepatol. 2022; 12:398-408.
52. Lai JC, Sonnenday CJ, Tapper EB, Duarte-Rojo A, Dunn MA, Bernal W, Carey EJ, Dasarathy S, Kamath BM, Kappus MR, Montano-Loza AJ, Nagai S, Tandon P. Frailty in liver transplantation: An expert opinion statement from the American Society of Transplantation Liver and Intestinal Community of Practice. Am J Transplant. 2019; 19:1896-1906.
53. Guan C, Niu H. Frailty assessment in older adults with chronic obstructive respiratory diseases. Clin Interv Aging. 2018; 13:1513-1524.
54. Hanlon P, Nicholl BI, Jani BD, Lee D, McQueenie R, Mair FS. Frailty and pre-frailty in middle-aged and older adults and its association with multimorbidity and mortality: A prospective analysis of 493 737 UK Biobank participants. Lancet Public Health. 2018; 3:e323-e332.
55. Fermont JM, Mohan D, Fisk M, Bolton CE, Macnee W, Cockcroft JR, McEniery C, Fuld J, Cheriyan J, Tal-Singer R, Müllerova H, Wood AM, Wilkinson IB, Polkey MI; ERICA consortium. Short physical performance battery as a practical tool to assess mortality risk in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. Age Ageing. 2021; 50:795-801.

56. Zhang D, Tang W, Dou LY, Luo J, Sun Y. Four different frailty models predict health outcomes in older patients with stable chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. BMC Geriatr. 2022; 22:57.
57. St Clair-Sullivan N, Simmons K, Harding R, Levett T, Maddocks M, Roberts J, Trotman D, Yi D, Vera JH, Bristowe K. Frailty and frailty screening: A qualitative study to elicit perspectives of people living with HIV and their healthcare professionals. HIV Med. 2023; 24:480-490.
58. Bloch M. Frailty in people living with HIV. AIDS Res Ther. 2018; 15:19.
59. Lundqvist M, Alwin J, Henriksson M, Husberg M, Carlsson P, Ekdahl AW. Cost-effectiveness ofcomprehensive geriatric assessment at an ambulatory geriatric unit based on the AGe-FIT trial. BMC Geriatr. 2018; 18:32.
60. European AIDS Clinical Society. European AIDS clinical society guidelines. 2019. Available at: *https://www.eacsociety.org/files/2019_ guidelines-100_final.pdf* (accessed October 12, 2023).
61. Beanland A, Alagaratnam J, Goffe C, Bailey A, Dosekun O, Petersen C, Ayap W, Garvey LJ, Walsh J, Mackie NE, Winston A. Objective and subjective rapid frailty screening tools in people with HIV. HIV Med. 2021; 22:146-150.
62. Pelloquin R, Abdo M, MaWhinney S, Jankowski CM, Erlandson KM. Physical Function and Frailty Tools in Mortality Prediction of Middle-Aged Adults With HIV. J Acquir Immune Defic Syndr. 2020; 85:372-378.
63. Serra-Prat M, Lavado À, Cabré M, Burdoy E, Palomera E, Papiol M, Parera JM. Development and validation of the electronic screening index of frailty. Age Ageing. 2022; 51:161.
64. Ducharme J. World Health Organization declares COVID-19 a "Pandemic". Here's what that means. Time. 2020. Available at: *https://time.com/5791661/ who-coronavirus-pandemic-declaration* (accessed October 10, 2023).
65. Bonanad C, García-Blas S, Tarazona-Santabalbina F, Sanchis J, Bertomeu-González V, Fácila L, Ariza A, Núñez J, Cordero A. The Effect of Age on Mortality in Patients With COVID-19: A Meta-Analysis With 611,583 Subjects. J Am Med Dir Assoc. 2020; 21:915-918.
66. Polidori MC, Sies H, Ferrucci L, Benzing T. COVID-19 mortality as a fingerprint of bio- logical age. Ageing Res Rev. 2021; 67:101308.
67. Church S, Rogers E, Rockwood K, Theou O. A scoping review of the Clinical Frailty Scale. BMC Geriatr. 2020; 20:393.
68. Clegg A, Bates C, Young J, Ryan R, Nichols L, Ann Teale E, Mohammed MA, Parry J, Marshall T. Development and validation of an electronic frailty index using routine primary care electronic health record data. Age Ageing. 2016; 45:353-360.
69. Mak JKL, Eriksdotter M, Annetorp M, *et al*. Two Years with COVID-19: The Electronic Frailty Index Identifies High-Risk Patients in the Stockholm GeroCovid Study. Gerontology. 2023; 69:396-405.
70. Chen HJ, Chen PY, Kao CL, Sung WH. Smartphone frailty screening: Development of a quantitative early detection method for the frailty syndrome. J Chin Med Assoc. 2020; 83:1039-1047.
71. Gahche JJ, Arensberg MB, Weiler M, Dwyer JT. Opportunities for Adding Undernutrition and Frailty Screening Measures in US National Surveys. Adv Nutr. 2021; 12:2312-2320.
72. Ibrahim K, Howson FFA, Culliford DJ, Sayer AA, Roberts HC. The feasibility of assessing frailty and sarcopenia in hospitalised older people: A comparison of commonly used tools. BMC Geriatr. 2019; 19:42.
73. Nan J, Duan Y, Wu S, Liao L, Li X, Zhao Y, Zhang H, Zeng X, Feng H. Perspectives of older adults, caregivers, healthcare providers on frailty screening in primary care: A systematic review and qualitative meta-synthesis. BMC Geriatr. 2022; 22:482.
74. Tew YY, Chan JH, Keeling P, Shenkin SD, MacLullich A, Mills NL, Denvir MA, Anand A. Predicting readmission and death after hospital discharge: A comparison of conventional frailty measurement with an electronic health record-based score. Age Ageing. 2021; 50:1641-1648.
75. Daniels R, van Rossum E, Beurskens A, van den Heuvel W, de Witte L. The predictive validity of three self-report screening instruments for identifying frail older people in the community. BMC Public Health. 2012; 12:69.
76. Shourick J, Lucas P, Tavassoli N, Rego-Lopes M, Seux ML, Hanon O, Andrieu S, Vellas B, Forette F. Sensitivity, Specificity, Positive and Negative Predictive Values of a Postal Mail Self-Screening Tool for Frailty in French Older Adults. J Frailty Aging. 2023; 12:175-181.
77. Liguori I, Russo G, Bulli G, Curcio F, Flocco V, Galizia G, Della-Morte D, Gargiulo G, Testa G, Cacciatore F, Bonaduce D, Abete P. Validation of "(fr)AGILE": A quick tool to identify multidimensional frailty in the elderly. BMC Geriatr. 2020; 20:375.
78. Warnier RMJ, van Rossum E, Du Moulin MFMT, van Lottum M, Schols JMGA, Kempen GIJM. The opinions and experiences of nurses on frailty screening among older hospitalized patients. An exploratory study. BMC Geriatr. 2021; 21:624.
79. Vergara I, Mateo-Abad M, Saucedo-Figueredo MC, Machón M, Montiel-Luque A, Vrotsou K, Nava Del Val MA, Díez-Ruiz A, Güell C, Matheu A, Bueno A, Núñez J, Rivas-Ruiz F. Description of frail older people profiles according to four screening tools applied in primary care settings: A cross sectional analysis. BMC Geriatr. 2019; 19:342.
80. Watanabe D, Yoshida T, Yamada Y, Watanabe Y, Yamada M, Fujita H, Miyachi M, Arai H, Kimura M. Combined use of two frailty tools in predicting mortality in older adults. Sci Rep. 2022; 12:15042.
81. Watanabe D, Yoshida T, Watanabe Y, Yamada Y, Miyachi M, Kimura M. Validation of the Kihon Checklist and the frailty screening index for frailty defined by the phenotype model in older Japanese adults. BMC Geriatr. 2022; 22:478.
82. Liang YD, Zhang YN, Li YM, Chen YH, Xu JY, Liu M, Li J, Ma Z, Qiao LL, Wang Z, Yang JF, Wang H. Identification of Frailty and Its Risk Factors in Elderly Hospitalized Patients from Different Wards: A Cross-Sectional Study in China. Clin Interv Aging. 2019; 14:2249-2259.
83. Bai DX, Liang Y, Wu CX, Hou CM, Gao J. Reliability and validity of the Chinese version of the trauma-specific frailty index (TSFI) for geriatric trauma patients. BMC Geriatr. 2023; 23:617.
84. Lim SH, Malhotra R, Østbye T, Ang SY, Ng XP, Agus N, Sunari RNB, Aloweni F. Sensitivity and specificity of three screening tools for frailty in hospitalized older adults. Int J Nurs Stud. 2023; 139:104435.
85. Bautista MAC, Malhotra R. Identification and

Measurement of Frailty: A Scoping Review of Published Research from Singapore. Ann Acad Med Singapore. 2018; 47:455-491.
86. Nygaard H, Henriksen M, Suetta C, *et al*. Comparison of two frailty screening tools for acutely admitted elderly patients. Danish Medical Journal, 2022, 69:A11210866-A11210866.
87. Bristow C, George G, Hillsmith G, *et al*. Low levels of frailty in HIV-positive older adults on antiretroviral therapy in northern Tanzania. J Neurovirol. 2021; 27:58-69.
88. T Sriwong W, Mahavisessin W, Srinonprasert V, Siriussawakul A, Aekplakorn W, Limpawattana P, Suraarunsumrit P, Ramlee R, Wongviriyawong T. Validity and reliability of the Thai version of the simple frailty questionnaire (T-FRAIL) with modifications to improve its diagnostic properties in the preoperative setting. BMC Geriatr. 2022; 22:161.
89. Ko RE, Moon SM, Kang D, Cho J, Chung CR, Lee Y, Hong YS, Lee SH, Lee JH, Suh GY. Translation and validation of the Korean version of the clinical frailty scale in older patients. BMC Geriatr. 2021; 21:47.
90. McGovern J, Grayston A, Coates D, Leadbitter S, Hounat A, Horgan PG, Dolan RD, McMillan DC. The relationship between the modified frailty index score (mFI-5), malnutrition, body composition, systemic inflammation and short-term clinical outcomes in patients undergoing surgery for colorectal cancer. BMC Geriatr. 2023; 23:9.
91. Huisingh-Scheetz M, Walston J. How should older adults with cancer be evaluated for frailty? J Geriatr Oncol. 2017; 8:8-15.
92. Zanotto T, Mercer TH, van der Linden ML, Koufaki P. Screening tools to expedite assessment of frailty in people receiving haemodialysis: A diagnostic accuracy study. BMC Geriatr. 2021; 21:411.
93. Buchard B, Boirie Y, Cassagnes L, Lamblin G, Coilly A, Abergel A. Assessment of Malnutrition, Sarcopenia and Frailty in Patients with Cirrhosis: Which Tools Should We Use in Clinical Practice? Nutrients. 2020; 12:186.

Received December 15, 2023; Revised January 9, 2024; Accepted January 11, 2024.

**Address correspondence to:*
Deng Yi, Graduate School of Nursing, Hamamatsu University School of Medicine, Hamamatsu, Shizuoka, Japan.
E-mail: M23012@hama-med.ac.jp

Released online in J-STAGE as advance publication January 13, 2024.

Review

DOI: 10.5582/irdr.2023.01111

The use of artificial intelligence in the treatment of rare diseases: A scoping review

Da He[1,§], Ru Wang[1,§], Zhilin Xu[2], Jiangna Wang[3], Peipei Song[4], Haiyin Wang[1,*], Jinying Su[5,*]

[1] Shanghai Health Development Research Center (Shanghai Medical Information Center), Shanghai, China;
[2] EYE & ENT Hospital of Fudan University, Shanghai, China;
[3] Jiangxi University of Chinese Medicine, Shanghai, China;
[4] Center for Clinical Sciences, National Center for Global Health and Medicine, Tokyo, Japan;
[5] Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Shanghai, China.

SUMMARY With the increasing application of artificial intelligence (AI) in medicine and healthcare, AI technologies have the potential to improve the diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis of rare diseases. Presently, existing research predominantly focuses on the areas of diagnosis and prognosis, with relatively fewer studies dedicated to the domain of treatment. The purpose of this review is to systematically analyze the existing literature on the application of AI in the treatment of rare diseases. We searched three databases for related studies, and established criteria for the selection of retrieved articles. From the 407 unique articles identified across the three databases, 13 articles from 8 countries were selected, which investigated 10 different rare diseases. The most frequently studied rare disease group was rare neurologic diseases (n = 5/13, 38.46%). Among the four identified therapeutic domains, 7 articles (53.85%) focused on drug research, with 5 specifically focused on drug discovery (drug repurposing, the discovery of drug targets and small-molecule inhibitors), 1 on pre-clinical studies (drug interactions), and 1 on clinical studies (information strength assessment of clinical parameters). Across the selected 13 articles, we identified total 32 different algorithms, with random forest (RF) being the most commonly used (n = 4/32, 12.50%). The predominant purpose of AI in the treatment of rare diseases in these articles was to enhance the performance of analytical tasks (53.33%). The most common data source was database data (35.29%), with 5 of these studies being in the field of drug research, utilizing classic databases such as RCSB, PDB and NCBI. Additionally, 47.37% of the articles highlighted the existing challenge of data scarcity or small sample sizes.

Keywords artificial intelligence, rare diseases, treatment

1. Introduction

Rare diseases are defined as illnesses with a low incidence rate. Different countries and regions have varying specifications for the incidence rates of rare diseases. In the European Union, diseases with an incidence rate lower than 1 in 2,000 are considered rare diseases (*1*); in the United States, rare diseases are defined as those affecting fewer than 200,000 individuals annually (or an incidence rate less than 1 in 1,500) (*2*); in Japan, rare diseases are specified as those affecting fewer than 50,000 individuals (or an incidence rate of 1 in 2,500) (*3,4*). According to the World Health Organization (WHO), rare diseases are those where the number of individuals affected constitutes 0.65‰ to 1‰ of the total population (*5*). With the continuous advancement in disease diagnostic technologies, the increasing subdivision in the field of diseases, and the yearly improvement in data statistics, new diseases have been continually identified or included since the definition of rare diseases was established, leading to an increase in the types of rare diseases. There are currently more than 7,000 known rare diseases globally (*6*), with an estimated accumulated prevalence of 3.5–5.9% and affecting more than 400 million people worldwide (*7,8*).

Due to the difficulty in diagnosing rare diseases, many are treated as common illnesses or remain undetected, suggesting that the actual number of patients is likely higher than statistical estimates. Furthermore, with advancements in diagnostic technologies and increased health literacy among populations, the number of individuals identified with rare diseases continues to expand (*9*).

Currently, due to unclear etiologies, the small number

of patients, among other reasons, rare disease patients face significant challenges compared to those with common diseases such as hypertension and diabetes. These challenges include difficulties in diagnosis, a lack of specific treatment techniques post-diagnosis, or the inability to afford available medications (*10,11*). Globally, only about 5% of rare diseases have effective treatment methods available. Even for rare diseases with existing treatment options, the cost of medications is often prohibitively expensive, imposing a substantial economic burden on both patients and society (*12*).

In recent years, due to the large volume and structural nature of data in the medical field, which align well with the needs of artificial intelligence, the development and application of artificial intelligence (AI) has permeated various domains within healthcare (*13-18*). In the field of rare diseases, the majority of AI applications pertain to disease screening, diagnosis, and prognosis, areas in which there is a substantial body of related literature (*19-21*), and where comprehensive review studies have already categorized and summarized the findings. While screening, diagnosis, and prognosis are undoubtedly important, for the vast number of patients with confirmed rare diseases, the need for treatment is more urgent (*22*). Currently, research and applied studies of AI in the treatment of rare diseases are relatively scarce, and there are no comprehensive review studies on the use of AI in the treatment of rare diseases.

In this scoping review, we explore scientific literature to investigate the application of AI in the treatment of rare diseases, and identify the key features used to train these AI models based on the pursued objectives. This includes specific groups of rare diseases that have been highlighted, therapeutic areas, key algorithms employed, data types used in models, as well as potential opportunities and challenges. These functionalities can support the future development of AI in the treatment of rare diseases.

2. The scoping review methods

This scoping review was followed to be designed and performed by the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic reviews and meta-Analyses extension for scoping reviews (PRISMA-ScR) guideline (*23*).

2.1. Literature search

We conducted a systematic search across three databases for eligible articles: *i*) PubMed, *ii*) Web of Science, and *iii*) the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) Xplore. The specific search terms used are detailed in Table 1 (Online Data, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=179*).

Within the PubMed database, our primary search terms were "Rare Diseases/therapy"(Mesh) and "Artificial Intelligence"(Mesh). To comprehensively retrieve articles in the domain of artificial intelligence, we also included all associated entry terms related to artificial intelligence in PubMed. In addition, in order to extensively search for applications of rare diseases in the therapeutic area, we reviewed all 26 MeSH terms associated with the term "therapy" in the MeSH Database of PubMed. Based on this, we identified six terms – virtual reality exposure therapy, computer assisted therapy, radiotherapy, wearables, surgical robot, and drug therapy – as interventions for rare diseases. These terms were then combined with "Rare Diseases"(Mesh) for filtration.

In the IEEE Xplore, our search terms were ("All Metadata": Rare Diseases) combined with the aforementioned six therapeutic interventions. This combined search was further merged with the term ("All Metadata": artificial intelligence).

In the Web of Science database, our search terms were TS = (Rare Diseases) OR TS = (orphan disease), which were then combined with the six treatment methods. This combined search was further merged with the term TS = (Artificial Intelligence). Additionally, we incorporated the search terms "machine learning" and "deep learning".

2.2. Literature selection

After obtaining the potential articles, we conducted a screening of abstracts and full texts. The following criteria were employed to identify relevant literature concerning the use of artificial intelligence methods for rare disease treatment: *i*) Written in English, *ii*) Published or publicly available (*e.g.* conference proceedings) between January 1, 2010, and August 31, 2023. And exclusion criteria included: *i*) Not published in peer-reviewed journals or conference proceedings (*e.g.* preprints), *ii*) Not original research (*e.g.* reviews, editorials), *iii*) Not human patient data or scientific texts or publications (*i.e.*, articles using animal or simulated data were excluded), and *iv*) not rare disease topic.

2.3. Data extraction and synthesis

One reviewer (WJN) developed and extracted metadata for each article. Two reviewers (WR and HD) verified and refined the metadata for completeness. Upon selecting the relevant studies based on the eligibility criteria, the metadata extracted from these articles included: *i*) Publication year; *ii*) Country where the study was conducted (according to the senior author's affiliation); *iii*) Rare disease (diseases were specified using the Orphanet disorder name); *iv*) Rare disease group (according to the "preferential parent" of the disease as defined in the hierarchy of the Orphanet classification (*24*), the classification is based on the 34 disorder groups updated on Orphant's website in July 2023 (*25*); *v*) Therapeutic area; *vi*) Treatment method

(interventions used for rare diseases); *vii*) Purpose of using AI (objective of the study); *viii*) AI architecture (including types of algorithms such as deep learning and machine learning); *ix*) Data type; and *x*) Challenges. Table 2 (Online Data, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=179*) summarizes the metadata elements.

3. Specific status description

The literature search identified a total of 407 unique records. After screening and assessing the articles for eligibility, 13 articles were included in the final analysis (The list of the selected 13 articles with their metadata elements extracted is available in Supplementary Table S1, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=180*). Figure 1 displays the Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic reviews and meta-Analyses (PRISMA) flow diagram for article selection. After de-duplication, the literature search identified a total of 407 unique records, 281 articles were included in full-text screening. After screening and assessing the articles for eligibility, 13 articles were included in the final analysis.

3.1. Yearly publication trend

These studies originated from eight different countries. The majority of the publications (n = 5, 38.46%) came from the United States, followed by Italy (n = 2, 15.38%); Canada, Austria, France, India, Japan, and China each contributed one publication (n = 1, 7.69%).

Over the 13-year span from 2010 to 2023, articles meeting the criteria were found from 2017 to 2022. The number of articles rose from 1 in 2017 to 5 in 2021, and four articles were identified in 2022. Since the beginning of 2023 and as of August 31, 2023, no articles have been published that fulfill the selection criteria concerning the use of AI in the treatment of rare diseases.

3.2. Rare diseases and rare diseases group

Ten unique rare diseases were identified from the reviewed articles, with 3 articles focusing on general rare diseases rather than specific conditions. Table 3 presents the rare diseases identified in the selected articles, along with their corresponding orpha numbers. We classified the rare diseases identified from the reviewed articles into rare disease groups using the hierarchical structure defined by Orphanet. If an article aims to investigate specific characteristics of rare diseases that can be applied to general rare diseases. A rare disease can qualify for multiple groups, and the group as defined by the preferential parent in the classification hierarchy.

Of the 10 diseases, 3 (30%) had a prevalence of 1-9/100,000 patients, 2 (20%) had a prevalence of 1-9/1,000,000, 2 (20%) had a prevalence of 1–5/10,000, and 1 (10%) < 1/1,000,000, and for the remaining two diseases, Orphanet did not provide their prevalence.

The groups of rare diseases identified are illustrated in Figure 2 (Online Data, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=179*). The most frequent group was rare neurologic disease, accounting for 5 out of 13 articles (38.46%). All other groups were represented by just one article each.

3.3. Therapeutic area and method

As illustrated in Figure 3 (Online Data, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=179*), from the 13 articles selected based on our criteria, we identified four therapeutic areas. Among

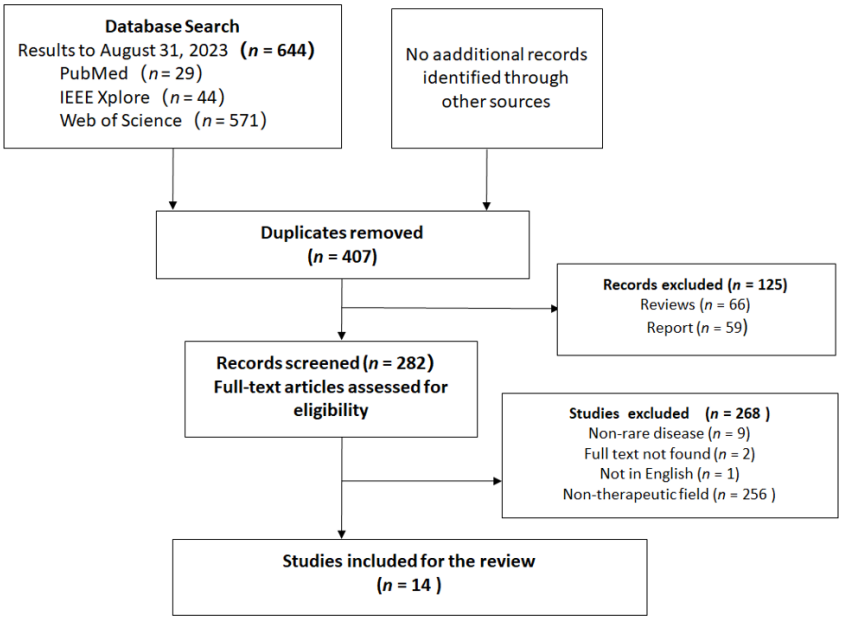


Figure 1. PRISMA flow diagram for literature selection.

Table 3. Rare diseases included in the selected literature

Rare disease	Orpha number (ORPHA)	Prevalence	Rare disease group (preferential parent)	Number of studies	Use cases (*Ref*)
General rare disease	NA	none	NA	3 (23.08%)	*26-28*
Metachromatic leukodystrophy	512	1–9/1,000,000	Rare neurologic disease	1 (7.69%)	*29*
Glycogen storage disease due to acid maltase deficiency	365	1–9/100,000	Rare genetic disease	1 (7.69%)	*30*
Canavan disease	141	Unknown	Rare neurologic disease	1 (7.69%)	*31*
Creutzfeldt-Jakob	204	< 1/1,000,000	Rare neurologic disease	1 (7.69%)	*32*
Pleural mesothelioma	50251	1–9/100,000	Rare neoplastic disease	1 (7.69%)	*33*
Alkaptonuria	56	1–9/1,000,000	Rare inborn errors of metabolism	1 (7.69%)	*34*
Acute Myeloid Leukaemi	519	1–5/10,000	Rare hematologic disease	1 (7.69%)	*35*
Congenital cataract microcornea with corneal opacity	289499	Unknown	Rare ophthalmic disorder	1 (7.69%)	*36*
Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis	803	1–9/100,000	Rare neurologic disease	1 (7.69%)	*37*
Canavan disease	141	Unknown	Rare neurologic disease	1 (7.69%)	*38*

these, 7 articles (53.85%) focused on drug research, 3 articles (23.08%) on precision medicine, 2 articles (15.38%) on health management, and 1 article (7.69%) on personalized services.

It's noteworthy that, of the 7 articles in the drug research area, 5 were focused on the area of drug discovery (*e.g.*, drug repurposing, the discovery of small-molecule drugs), 1 on pre-clinical studies (drug interactions), and 1 on clinical studies (information strength assessment of clinical parameters).

3.3.1. Drug research

Specifically, among the 5 articles focusing on drug discovery, 3 focused on the field of drug repurposing (*27-29*), that is, linking disease mechanisms with drug effects. Drug repurposing plays a significant role in the field of drug discovery. Foksinska *et al.* mentioned that identifying treatments for rare diseases is challenging due to limited understanding of disease mechanisms, small cohort sizes, inter-individual symptom variability, and little commercial incentive to develop new treatments. One promising therapeutic avenue was drug repurposing, where FDA-approved drugs were repurposed as new treatments (*26*). Challa *et al.* asserted that in its current state, ML (machine learning) was best leveraged in the field of drug repurposing to inform human "go/no-go" decision-making (*39*). Table 4 displays the overview of articles of drug research.

Cong *et al.* proposed a novel two-stage prediction approach for drug repurposing based on machine learning. This methodology clustered diseases based on gene expression patterns and evaluates drug efficacy through the reversibility of abnormal gene expression. It identified 22 drugs such as KM 00927, I-BET, alvocidib, and vorinostat, as candidates for repurposing, which had high efficacy against specific diseases like inclusion body myositis, polymyositis, and dermatomyositis (*27*). Sosa *et al.* proposed a literature-based knowledge graph embedding method for identifying drug repurposing opportunities in rare diseases. The method leveraged a large knowledge graph, the Global Network of Biomedical Relationships (GNBR), which integrated information from pharmacology, genetics, and pathology to generate drug repurposing hypotheses. The method achieved high performance on a gold-standard test set of known drug indications (AUROC = 0.89) and is capable of generating hypotheses for novel applications of existing drugs (*28*). Esmail *et al.* constructed an artificially induced whole-brain organoid platform (NEUBorg), which serves as an advanced iteration of the previously validated machine learning platform, DeepNEU (v6.2). Using NEUBorg, they generated artificially induced whole-brain organoids (aiWBO) simulations of metachromatic leukodystrophy (MLD) and provided a new method to evaluate factors related to MLD pathogenesis, disease progression and new potential treatment options. Utilizing this method, the authors identified 861 single and dual drug combinations as potential therapeutic targets for MLD. The study comprehensively summarizes the drug repurposing outcomes and the pharmaceuticals evaluated in the simulations (*29*).

One study focused on the discovery of drug targets. Esmail *et al.* constructed an AI platform, DeepNEU v3.6, to support target identification for Infantile Onset Pompe Disease (IOPD). This platform is capable of generating computer-simulated stem cells (aiPSC) and differentiated skeletal muscle cells (aiSkMC) models, both with and without the expression of Acid Alpha-Glucosidase (GAA). These simulations were validated using peer-reviewed results from existing literature to assess calcium homeostasis and mitochondrial function in IOPD patients. The authors employed aiSkMC IOPD simulations to identify known and novel biomarkers as well as potential therapeutic targets. Ultimately, the aiSkMC model for IOPD accurately predicted gene and phenotypic features reported in recent literature (*30*).

Another study focuses on the discovery of lead compounds for small-molecule inhibitors. Stecula *et al.* introduced a deep convolutional neural network, AtomNet, to identify lead compounds that inhibit Aspartate N-Acetyltransferase (ANAT), targeting the treatment of Canavan disease. The authors demonstrate AtomNet's capability to identify novel active scaffolds under challenging constraints, such as the scarcity or complete unavailability of target data, and thereby supporting early-stage drug discovery efforts (*31*).

Table 4. Overview of articles of drug research

Therapeutic area	Sub-area	Method	Algorithm	Product	Function and Result	*Ref.*
Drug research	Drug discovery	Drug repurposing	k-means, UMAP	A two-stage prediction approach for drug repurposing	This approach identified 22 drugs such as KM 00927, I-BET, alvocidib, and vorinostat, as candidates for repurposing, which had high efficacy against specific diseases like inclusion body myositis, polymyositis, dermatomyositis.	*27*
			UKG, UMAP	A literature-based knowledge graph embedding method	The method achieving high performance on a gold-standard test set of known drug indications (AUROC = 0.89) and is capable of generating hypotheses for novel applications of existing drugs.	*28*
			RNN, CM, SVM, GA	NEUBOrg	Could generate aiWBO simulations of MLD to evaluate Factors related to MLD pathogenesis, disease progression and new potential treatment options. The authors identified 861 single and dual drug combinations as potential therapeutic targets for MLD.	*29*
		Discovery of drug targets	RNN, CM, SVM, GA	DeepNEU v3.6	This platform is capable of generating aiPSC and aiSkMC models, both with and without the expression of GAA. The aiSkMC model for IOPD accurately predicted gene and phenotypic features reported in recent literature.	*30*
		Discovery of lead compounds for small-molecule inhibitors	CNN	AtomNet	to identify lead compounds that inhibit ANAT, targeting the treatment of Canavan disease.	*31*
	Pre-clinical research		LR, KNN, SVM, DT, RF, XGBoost	A model for studying the relationship between drugs used in the treatment of CJD and their impact on clinical parameters.	This model could suggest appropriate drugs upon the input of clinical parameters. The results indicated that Random Forest outperformed XGBoost, with an average accuracy of 98.39%.	*32*
	Clinical research		RF	Highlighted the informative power of clinical parameters in predicting initial response to treatment.	To predict the initial treatment response of patients with advanced/unresectable pleural mesothelioma and evaluate different clinical parameters (including gender, tissue type, BMI, smoking habits, number of packs/year and disease stage, etc.) and the correlation with response. The average AUC value of the model was 77.0%, the accuracy was 75%, the sensitivity was 74.8%, and the specificity was 83.3%.	*33*

In addition, one study focuses on pre-clinical research concerning drug interactions. Rajagopal *et al.* employed machine learning algorithms to develop a model for studying the relationship between drugs used in the treatment of Creutzfeldt-Jakob Disease (CJD) and their impact on clinical parameters. This model could suggest appropriate drugs upon the input of clinical parameters. The study evaluated various machine learning algorithms, such as Logistic Regression (LR), K-Nearest Neighbor (KNN), Decision Tree Classifier(DT), Support Vector Machine (SVM), Exterme Gradient Boosting (XGBoost), and RF. The results indicated that RF outperformed XGBoost, with an average accuracy of 98.39% (*32*).

Furthermore, one study highlighted the informative power of clinical parameters in predicting initial response to treatment. Massafra *et al.* used the RF algorithm combined with the sequential forward feature selection procedure to predict the initial treatment response of patients with advanced/unresectable pleural mesothelioma and evaluated different clinical parameters (including gender, tissue type, BMI, smoking habits, number of packs/year and disease stage, *etc.*) and the correlation with response. The average AUC (Area Under Curve) value of the model was 77.0%, the accuracy was 75%, the sensitivity was 74.8%, and the specificity was 83.3% (*33*).

3.3.2. Precision medicine

Drug repurposing can be difficult and requires depth of knowledge across multiple fields, which is complicated by the rapid pace of biomedical knowledge discovery.

To address these challenges, Foksinska *et al.* developed MediKanren, an artificial intelligence tool that used mechanistic insights into genetic diseases to identify treatment options to enable precision medicine for rare diseases. Utilizing knowledge graphs, mediKanren could effectively link all relevant literature and databases. The tool enabled a scalable process that has been used to help more than 500 rare disease families *(26*). Spiga *et al*. used machine learning algorithms, especially the RF algorithm, to establish a comprehensive digital ecosystem, AreciseKUre, which collected and analyzed data on the rare genetic disease Alkaptonuria (AKU), a digital platform aimed at creating a Precision Medicine Ecosystem (PME). AreciseKUre could determine the most suitable treatment method for AKU patients based on their quality of life (QoL) scores before and after medication. It represented a proof of principle study that could be applied to other rare diseases, allowing data management, analysis and interpretation (*27*). Licandro *et al.* proposed a novel method, WGAN-NN, for the computational quantification of Acute Myeloid Leukemia (AML) cancer cells in blood samples. WGAN-NN is a semi-supervised learning approach that embeds a Fully Connected Neural Network (FNN) within a Wasserstein Generative Adversarial Network (WGAN). The results show that the proposed semi-supervised WGAN embeddings are superior to PCA-NN and FNN (*35*). Table 5 displays the overview of articles of precision medicine.

3.3.3. Health management and personalized service

Long *et al.* introduced an artificial intelligence agent (AI agent), CC-Cruiser, that used deep learning for the diagnosis, risk stratification, and therapeutic recommendations for congenital cataracts. The AI agent was integrated with a cloud-based, multi-hospital collaboration platform aiming to improve disease management for patients with rare diseases such as congenital cataracts. Results indicated that CC-Cruiser accurately diagnosed congenital cataracts and provided treatment decisions across computational tests, web-based studies, needle-in-a-haystack tests, and multi-hospital clinical trials. The authors also demonstrated that the performance of the AI agent was comparable to that of individual ophthalmologists (*36*). Kmetzsch *et al.* presented a novel disease progression score using cross-sectional multimodal data to assess frontotemporal dementia and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis, a rare neurodegenerative disease. This framework leveraged neuroimaging and microRNA data to train supervised multimodal variational autoencoders to learn meaningful latent spaces that represented disease progression (*37*).

Chapron *et al.* discussed the impact of myotonic dystrophy type 1 (DM1) on the quality of life and daily activities of affected individuals in Quebec, Canada. To mitigate the effects of DM1, the authors proposed a complete assistance system that provided training guidance and motivation, Acti-DM1, which identified movement-related activities and monitored each exercise performed during training sessions (*38*). Table 6 displays the overview of articles of health management and personalized service.

3.4. Purpose of using AI and algorithms

In the 13 articles, we identified a total of 20 different algorithms (multiple algorithms were often studied in a single article. One article did not specify a particular algorithm but utilized the AI platform medKanren, which we categorized as "other"). The total count of algorithms was 32. The most frequently used algorithm was RF, accounting for 4 instances (12.50%); followed by SVM with 3 instances (9.37%); Subsequent to these were DT, KNN, Uniform Manifold Approximation and Projection (UMAP), Generative evolutionary algorithms (GA), Confusion Matrix (CM), Recurrent Neural Network (RNN), and Convolutional Neural Networks (CNN), each with 2 instances (6.25%); The algorithms k-means, WGAN, LR, XGBoost, FNN, Uncertain Knowledge Graph (UKG), Multilayer Perceptron (MLP), Naive Bayes (NB), Principal Component Analysis (PCA), Variational Autoencoder (VAE); and "Other" accounted for 1 instance (3.13%) (Figure 4, Online Data, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=179*).

In the 13 articles, we identified 15 purposes for the use of AI in rare disease treatment, categorized into 4 types (a single article might have more than one

Table 5. Overview of articles of precision medicine

Therapeutic area	Algorithm	Product	Function and Result	(*Ref*)
Precision medicine	Other	MediKanren	MediKanren could effectively link all relevant literature and databases. The tool enabled a scalable process that has been used to help more than 500 rare disease families	*26*
	RF	AreciseKUre	AreciseKUre could determine the most suitable treatment method for AKU patients based on their quality of life (QoL) scores before and after medication.	*34*
	WGA, PCA, FNN	WGAN-NN	To calculate the number of AML cancer cells in blood samples. The results show that the proposed semi-supervised WGAN embeddings are superior to PCA-NN and FNN.	*35*

Table 6. Overview of articles of health management and personalized service

Therapeutic area	Algorithm	Product	Function and Result	(*Ref*)
Health management	CNN	CC-Cruiser	CC-Cruiser accurately diagnosed congenital cataracts and provided treatment decisions across computational tests, web-based studies, needle-in-a-haystack tests, and multi-hospital clinical trials. The authors also demonstrated that the performance of the AI agent was comparable to that of individual ophthalmologists.	*36*
	VAE	A novel disease progression score using cross-sectional multimodal data to assess frontotemporal dementia and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis.	This framework leveraged neuroimaging and microRNA data to train supervised multimodal variational autoencoders to learn meaningful latent spaces that represented disease progression.	*37*
Personalized service	RF, DT, SVM, KNN, NB, MLP	Acti-DM1	The system could identify movement-related activities and monitored each exercise performed during training sessions.	*38*

objective). The most prevalent purpose was to improve the performance of analytical tasks (*e.g.* improving model performance), accounting for 9 articles (53.33%); Proof-of-concept (*e.g.* analyzing the impact of drugs on clinical parameters) accounting for 3 articles (20.00%); To address the challenge of data scarcity was the goal in 3 articles (18.75%); and to reduce manual effort (*e.g.* leveraging AI tools for virtual drug screening to diminish the time and cost of manual experimentation) was highlighted in 1 article (6.67%) (Figure 5, Online Data, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=179*).

3.5. Data type

Over the 13 articles, we identified a total of 7 distinct data sources, cumulatively accounting for 18 data points (Note that each paper might reference more than one data type). The predominant source of data was derived from databases, represented in 6 articles (35.29%). Following this, image data, exemplified by CT scan datasets, was cited in 3 articles (17.65%). Omics data (*e.g.* genomics, proteomics), demographic data (*e.g.* age), and functional test data (*e.g.* pulse, blood pressure, and other physiological metrics) were each represented in 2 articles (11.76%). Both literature-derived data and experimentally obtained data were cited in a single article each, contributing to 5.88% of the data sources.

It is noteworthy that within the data sourced from databases, 5 articles pertained specifically to the domain of drug development, with databases such as RCSB PDB and NCBI – quintessential repositories in the drug development landscape – being employed. Meanwhile, 2 articles employed database-derived data in the context of precision therapy (*e.g.*, ApreciseKUre) (Figure 6, Online Data, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=179*).

3.6. Challenges in using the treatment of AI for rare diseases

We classified the challenges in using deep learning for rare disease research reported by the authors into 8 categories (Note that each paper might reference more than one challenge, and if no challenges were highlighted, they were labeled as "None"). Among the identified 19 challenges in applying AI in the field of rare diseases treatment, 10 articles (47.37%) mentioned the primary challenge is lack of sufficient data, indicating that the amount of available data has become the foremost challenge in using AI for rare disease research.

Enhancing interpretability stands as an imperative when applying AI in healthcare and medicine (*40,41*). While a multitude of studies have achieved commendable performance in their target analysis tasks, certain limitations warrant attention. Specifically, 15.76% (n = 3) of the articles stated that there's a need to have models with better interpretability. Additionally, 10.53% (n = 2) of the papers highlight the constrained availability of model options, indicating a pertinent need for diversified algorithms. The necessity for wet-lab validation within the realm of pharmaceutical research, signifies that future endeavors must bolster the reliability of AI methodologies. Another article highlighted that computational capabilities of wrist-worn devices used in their study were limited, necessitating a reduction in feature dimensions for machine learning algorithms (*38*). One article articulated that the dearth of suitable therapeutic options and limited acquired knowledge could potentially inhibit the utility of AI in the domain of rare diseases (*26*) (Figure 7, Online Data, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=179*).

4. The status quo and problems of AI application in the treatment of rare diseases

AI has been extensively utilized in various types of fundamental research to date. With the advent and rapid iteration of large language models such as ChatGPT, AI's involvement has emerged in the therapeutic domains of

many diseases (*42-46*). This study provides a review of research applying AI technologies in the treatment of rare diseases, aiming to understand the current global contributions of AI in the field of rare disease therapy.

4.1. The application of AI in the treatment of rare diseases emerged later and is relatively scarce

Although the concepts of rare diseases and artificial intelligence were introduced quite some time ago, research on the application of AI in the treatment of rare diseases did not emerge until 2017. Over time, the number of studies has not seen a substantial increase, unlike in the areas of rare disease prevention, screening, and prognosis (*47,48*).

In terms of the countries involved in the research, the United States leads in applying AI to the treatment of rare diseases, followed by Italy, Canada, Australia, and France – countries that are more advanced in biomedicine and artificial intelligence – as well as three Asian countries: Japan, China, and India. However, overall, the number of studies on the application of AI in the treatment of rare diseases is relatively low across all countries.

From the perspective of the disease categories included in the literature, a relatively higher proportion of studies focuses on neurological aspects, suggesting that research on neurological drugs and therapies is more prevalent among various rare disease treatments.

The complete lifecycle of a disease includes prevention, screening, diagnosis, treatment, and rehabilitation. In this process, compared to diagnosis, screening, and prognosis of rare diseases, studies on the application of AI in their treatment are noticeably less. In a 2020 scoping review on the application of machine learning in the field of rare diseases, of the 211 included studies, 40.8% used machine learning for diagnosis, 38.4% for prognosis, and only 4.7% for treatment (*48*). A systematic review included studies on the use of machine learning for diagnosis and prognosis, published in July 2023, and 22 studies were included (*19*). The timeframe for literature retrieval in this study was similar to that of our research, yet the number of studies incorporated was 1.6 times greater than those included in our study.

Of the 13 articles included in this study, more than half aimed to improve the performance of analytical models, while only 3 addressed the significant data scarcity issue in rare diseases. This highlights the considerable challenges in applying AI technology to treatment of rare diseases. Besides, prevention and screening of rare diseases aim for earlier and faster treatment of symptoms. For the large number of patients already diagnosed with rare diseases and for those who cannot avoid being born with rare conditions in the future, the need for effective treatment is more urgent than prevention and screening. Therefore, it is recommended that global efforts further prioritize research on rare disease medications and treatment methods, fully leveraging advanced algorithms and models such as AI to accelerate the development of corresponding therapies.

4.2. Drug research is the primary domain for AI application in the treatment of rare diseases

In the field of innovative drug research, the 'Double Ten Law' - indicating that it takes 10 years and an investment of one billion US dollars to develop a single innovative drug - is widely recognized globally due to the long development cycle, high investment, and substantial risk associated with drug research (*49,50*). For rare diseases, the development of innovative drugs is even more challenging due to their low incidence rates, complex pathogenic mechanisms, insufficient numbers of subjects for clinical trials, and lower expected product sales, all of which reduce the commercial incentive for drug development compared to common diseases (*51-54*).

The role of artificial intelligence in drug development primarily includes: First, target identification – AI can analyze large-scale data, such as genomic and proteomic data, to identify potential drug targets and predict which targets have a higher likelihood of success. Second, compound screening – following target identification, AI can be used to screen large databases to find compounds that may interact with the target and predict which compounds are more likely to be successful, allowing researchers to prioritize these molecules for further testing. Third, compound optimization – AI can also be used to optimize the chemical structure of compounds, predicting how changes in chemical structure can affect the properties of the compound, such as its ability to bind to the target and potential toxicity, thus enhancing its efficacy and safety. Fourth, clinical trial design – AI can analyze past trial data and predict which patients are most likely to benefit from a specific drug, thereby conducting more effective clinical trials. Fifth, AI can help scientists more quickly hypothesize and validate potential treatments for rare diseases (*55-57*).

According to the review results, one of the main strategies to address the challenges in drug development for rare diseases is repurposing of existing drugs, where AI algorithms, including deep learning and knowledge graph technologies, can play a significant role. By deepening the understanding of drug targets and compound synthesis through AI, existing drugs can be repurposed for new indications or used in combination to treat rare diseases. Additionally, using machine learning, deep learning, and other intelligent algorithms to predict potential gene targets for rare diseases, accurately identify possible rare disease drugs, and suggest appropriate medications for different patients are effective methods to address the challenges in drug development for rare diseases (*58*).

With the assistance of AI, the research time for therapeutic drugs for rare diseases can be significantly reduced, and the efficiency of development greatly enhanced, thereby lowering costs and increasing the likelihood of successful drug research.

4.3. AI contributes to enhancing the efficiency of precision treatment and health management for patients with rare diseases

Based on the understanding of some pathogenic genes responsible for rare diseases, AI can be utilized for its powerful capability in linking, expanding, learning, and computing large datasets. By integrating algorithms with specific databases, it is possible to conduct exploratory drug pairing or testing at the genetic and molecular level, thereby precisely identifying treatment methods for rare diseases. Additionally, AI can identify subgroups of patients most likely to respond to specific treatments, thereby increasing the effectiveness of therapy and reducing the risk of adverse events. Furthermore, AI can circumvent the inefficient resource allocation inherent in traditional human-led health management, widely disseminating the expertise of highly skilled physicians and enabling long-term health management of patients (*59*).

4.4. The lack of high-quality data and the difficulty in constructing and interpreting complex models are the primary challenges in applying AI to rare disease treatment

Although AI demonstrates immense potential in drug repurposing, precision treatment, health management, and personalized services for rare diseases, numerous challenges need to be addressed before its full potential can be realized, given its relatively recent emergence.

First, the lack of high-quality data presents a significant challenge. AI algorithms depend on large volumes of high-quality data for learning and making accurate predictions. However, the low incidence of rare diseases results in a smaller data pool, which can impact the development of AI algorithms. Additionally, the quality of this limited data is subject to various factors, potentially limiting the effectiveness of AI algorithms. In drug discovery, this implies the necessity of acquiring more high-quality data regarding drug targets, chemical structures, and biological pathways.

Second, the complexity in model construction and interpretation poses a challenge. The high complexity of biological systems necessitates the development of algorithms that can predict interactions between drugs and biological systems and generate novel candidate drugs that are both safe and effective. While there are existing methods to extract feature importance from black-box models or to visualize some operational mechanisms of models, comprehensively understanding and interpreting the inner workings and reasoning processes of complex models remain significant challenges.

4.5. Ethical considerations in the use of AI for rare disease treatment

The application of AI in drug discovery also faces ethical and regulatory challenges, including ensuring the safety and efficacy of drugs designed by AI and avoiding unintended consequences. Furthermore, it is crucial to ensure that the use of AI is responsible and adheres to ethical standards (*60-62*).

4.6. Limitations

There are some limitations to our study. Primarily, the scope of investigation was restricted to research implementing artificial intelligence methodologies within the domain of rare disease treatment. Despite the paucity of publications on this specific subject, articles were not excluded based on the caliber of their publishing medium (*e.g.* Journal Impact Factor, JIF), potentially introducing a degree of bias into the review outcomes. Furthermore, the exhaustive list of 7,000+ rare disease instances reported by Orphanet was not entirely leveraged as search terms, potentially precluding the identification of pertinent articles on a broader spectrum of rare diseases. A final constraining factor was the exclusive consideration of articles penned in English, possibly omitting germane articles written in other languages.

5. Conclusion

First, the treatment of rare diseases is equally as important as prevention and screening. However, current AI research in rare diseases is disproportionately focused on drug development, with less emphasis on treatment. There is a need for continued research in drug repurposing, target discovery, hit compound identification, precision treatment, health management, and personalized services. Second, the development and interpretability of algorithms remain one of the main barriers in the treatment of rare diseases. There is potential for the application of large language models in the treatment of rare diseases. Last, to address the issue of insufficient data for rare disease treatment, it is worth considering the expansion of data sources beyond existing databases to include real-world data, especially the establishment of global databases for individual diseases.

Funding: None.

Conflict of Interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

1. Julkowska D, Austin CP, Cutillo CM, Gancberg D, Hager C, Halftermeyer J, Jonker AH, Lau LPL, Norstedt I, Rath A, Schuster R, Simelyte E, van Weely S. The importance of international collaboration for rare diseases research: A European perspective. Gene Ther. 2017; 24: 562-571.
2. Vickers PJ. Challenges and opportunities in the treatment of rare diseases. Drug Discov World. 2013; 14:9-16.
3. Tada M, Hirata M, Sasaki M, Sakate R, Kohara A, Takahashi I, Kameoka Y, Masui T, Matsuyama A. The rare disease bank of Japan: Establishment, current status and future challenges. Human Cell. 2018; 31:183-188.
4. Ninomiya K, Okura M. Nationwide comprehensive epidemiological study of rare diseases in Japan using a health insurance claims database. Orphanet J Rare Dis. 2022; 17:1-13.
5. Song P, Gao J, Inagaki Y, Kokudo N, Tang W. Intractable and rare diseases research in Asia. Biosci Trends. 2012; 6:48-51.
6. Melnikova I. Rare diseases and orphan drugs[J]. Nature Reviews Drug Discovery. 2012; 11(4):267.
7. Hatem S, Long JC, Best S, Fehlberg Z, Nic Giolla Easpaig B, Braithwaite J. Mobile apps for people with rare diseases: Review and quality assessment using mobile app rating scale. J Med Internet Res. 2022; 24:e36691.
8. Nguengang WS, Lambert DM, Olry A, Rodwell C, Gueydan C, Lanneau V, Murphy D, Le Cam Y, Rath A. Estimating cumulative point prevalence of: Analysis of the Orphanet database, Eur J Hum Genet. 2020; 28:165-173.
9. Marwaha S, Knowles JW, Ashley EA. A guide for the diagnosis of rare and undiagnosed disease: Beyond the exome. Genome Med. 2022; 14:23.
10. AAMC. Rare diseases difficult to diagnose, cures hard to come by. *https://www.aamc.org/news/rare-diseases-difficult-diagnose-cures-hard-come* (accessed November 11, 2023).
11. Ragni MV, Moore CG, Bias V, Key NS, Kouides PA, Francis CW. Challenges of rare disease research: Limited patients and competing priorities. Haemophilia. 2012; 18:e192-e194.
12. Kaufmann P, Pariser AR, Austin C. From scientific discovery to treatments for rare diseases – the view from the national center for advancing translational sciences – office of rare diseases research. Orphanet J Rare Dis. 2018; 13:196.
13. Kelly CJ, Karthikesalingam A, Suleyman M, Corrado G, King D. Key challenges for delivering clinical impact with artificial intelligence. BMC Med. 2019; 17:195.
14. Lee DH, Yoon SN. Application of artificial intelligence-based technologies in the healthcare industry: Opportunities and challenges. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2021; 18:271.
15. Bajwa J, Munir U, Nori A, Williams B. Artificial intelligence in healthcare: Transforming the practice of medicine. Future Healthc J. 2021; 8:e188-e194.
16. Aung YYM, Wong DCS, Ting DSW. The promise of artificial intelligence: A review of the opportunities and challenges of artificial intelligence in healthcare. British Med Bull. 2021; 139:4-15.
17. Van Hartskamp M, Consoli S, Verhaegh W, Petkovic M, van de Stolpe A. Artificial intelligence in clinical health care applications. Interactive J Med Res. 2019; 8:e12100.
18. Shaw J, Rudzicz F, Jamieson T, Goldfarb A. Artificial intelligence and the implementation challenge. J Med Internet Res. 2019; 21:e13659.
19. Roman-Naranjo P, Parra-Perez AM, Lopez-Escamez JA. A systematic review on machine learning approaches in the diagnosis and prognosis of rare genetic diseases. J Biomed Inform. 2023; 143:104429.
20. Caballé-Cervigón N, Castillo-Sequera JL, Gómez-Pulido JA, Gómez-Pulido JM, Polo-Luque ML. Machine learning applied to diagnosis of human diseases: A systematic review. Appl Sci. 2020; 10:5135-5161.
21. Kumar Y, Koul A, Singla R, Ijaz MF. Artificial intelligence in disease diagnosis: A systematic literature review, synthesizing framework and future research agenda. J Ambient Intell Humaniz Comput. 2023; 14:8459-8486.
22. Vickers PJ. Challenges and opportunities in the treatment of rare diseases. Drug Discov World Spring. 2013; 14:9-16.
23. Tricco AC, Lillie E, Zarin W, *et al.* PRISMA extension for scoping reviews (PRISMA-ScR): checklist and explanation. Ann Intern Med. 2018; 169:467-473.
24. Orphanet. Procedural document: Orphanet nomenclature and classification. *https://www.orpha.net/orphacom/cahiers/docs/GB/eproc_disease_inventory_R1_Nom_Dis_EP_04.pdf* (accessed November 11, 2023).
25. Orphanet Knowledge base release of July 2023. *https://www.orphadata.com/classifications/* (accessed November 11, 2023).
26. Foksinska A, Crowder CM, Crouse AB, Henrikson J, Byrd WE, Rosenblatt G, Patton MJ, He K, Tran-Nguyen TK, Zheng M, Ramsey SA, Amin N, Osborne J, Might M. The precision medicine process for treating rare disease using the artificial intelligence tool mediKanren. Front Artif Intell. 2022; 5:910216.
27. Cong Y, Shintani M, Imanari F, Osada N, Endo T. A new approach to drug repurposing with two-stage prediction, machine learning, and unsupervised clustering of gene expression. OMICS. 2022; 6:339-347.
28. Sosa DN, Derry A, Guo M, Wei E, Brinton C, Altman RB. A literature-based knowledge graph embedding method for identifying drug repurposing opportunities in rare diseases. Pac Symp Biocomput. 2020; 25:463-474.
29. Esmail S, Danter WR. Artificially induced pluripotent stem cell-derived whole-brain organoid for modelling the pathophysiology of metachromatic leukodystrophy and drug repurposing. Biomedicines. 2021; 9:440.
30. Esmail S, Danter W R. DeepNEU: Artificially induced stem cell (aiPSC) and differentiated skeletal muscle cell (aiSkMC) simulations of infantile onset POMPE disease (IOPD) for potential biomarker identification and drug discovery. Front Cell Dev Biol. 2019; 7:325.
31. Stecula A, Hussain MS, Viola RE. Discovery of novel inhibitors of a critical brain enzyme using a homology model and a deep convolutional neural network. J Med Chem. 2020; 63:8867-8875.
32. Rajagopal, Ganesh B, Arock M. Application of machine learning techniques for study of drug interactions using clinical parameters for Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease. 2020 IEEE-EMBS Conference on Biomedical Engineering and Sciences (IECBES), IEEE. 2021; pp:415-420.
33. Massafra R, Catino A, Perrotti PMS, Pizzutilo P, Fanizzi A, Montrone M, Galetta D. Informative power evaluation of clinical parameters to predict initial therapeutic response in patients with advanced pleural mesothelioma: A machine learning approach. J Clin Med. 2022; 11:1659.
34. Spiga O, Cicaloni V, Visibelli A, Davoli A, Paparo MA, Orlandini M, Vecchi B, Santucci A. Towards a precision

medicine approach based on machine learning for tailoring medical treatment in alkaptonuria. Int J Mol Sci. 2021; 22:1187.
35. Licandro R, Schlegl T, Reiter M, Diem M, Dworzak M, Schumich A, Langs G, Kampel M. WGAN latent space embeddings for blast identification in childhood acute myeloid leukaemia. 2018 24th International Conference on Pattern Recognition (ICPR), IEEE. 2018; pp:3868-3873.
36. Long E, Lin H, Liu Z, *et al*. An artificial intelligence platform for the multihospital collaborative management of congenital cataracts. Nat Biomed Eng. 2017; 1:0024
37. Kmetzsch V, Becker E, Saracino D, Rinaldi D, Camuzat A, Le Ber I, Colliot O. Disease progression score estimation from multimodal imaging and microRNA data using supervised variational autoencoders. IEEE J Biomed Health Inform. 2022; 26:6024-6035.
38. Chapron K, Lapointe P, Lessard I, Lessard I, Darsmstadt-Bélanger H, Bouchard K, Gagnon C, Lavoie M, Duchesne E, Gaboury less S. Acti-DM1: Monitoring the activity level of people with myotonic dystrophy type 1 through activity and exercise recognition. IEEE Access. 2021; 9:49960-49973.
39. Challa AP, Zaleski NM, Jerome RN, Lavieri RR, Shirey-Rice JK, Barnado A, Lindsell CJ, Aronoff DM, Crofford LJ, Harris RC, Alp Ikizler T, Mayer IA, Holroyd KJ, Pulley JM. Human and machine intelligence together drive drug repurposing in rare diseases. Fron Genet. 2021; 12:707836.
40. Ahmad MA, Eckert C, Teredesai A. Interpretable machine learning in healthcare. Proceedings of the 2018 ACM international conference on bioinformatics, computational biology, and health informatics. 2018; pp:559-560.
41. Vellido A. The importance of interpretability and visualization in machine learning for applications in medicine and health care. Neural Computing Applications. 2020; 32:18069-18083.
42. Dave T, Athaluri SA, Singh S. ChatGPT in medicine: an overview of its applications, advantages, limitations, future prospects, and ethical considerations. Front Artif Intell. 2023; 6:1169595.
43. Wojtara M, Rana E, Rahman T, Khanna P, Singh H. Artificial intelligence in rare disease diagnosis and treatment. Clin Transl Sci. 2023; 16:2106-2111.
44. Flores AM, Demsas F, Leeper NJ, Ross EG. Leveraging machine learning and artificial intelligence to improve peripheral artery disease detection, treatment, and outcomes. Circ Res. 2021; 128:1833-1850.
45. Chen HY, Ge P, Liu JY, Qu JL, Bao F, Xu CM, Chen HL, Shang D, Zhang GX. Artificial intelligence: Emerging player in the diagnosis and treatment of digestive disease. World J Gastroenterol. 2022; 28:2152-2162.
46. Dilsizian SE, Siegel EL. Artificial intelligence in medicine and cardiac imaging: harnessing big data and advanced computing to provide personalized medical diagnosis and treatment. Curr Cardiol Rep. 2014; 16:441.
47. Lee J, Liu C, Kim J, Chen Z, Sun Y, Rogers JR, Chung WK, Weng C. Deep learning for rare disease: A scoping review. J of Biomed Inform. 2022; 135:104227.
48. Schaefer J, Lehne M, Schepers J, Prasser F, Thun S. The use of machine learning in rare diseases: a scoping review. Orphanet J Rare Dis, 2020; 15:145.
49. Sun D, Gao W, Hu H, Zhou S. Why 90% of clinical drug development fails and how to improve it? Acta Pharm Sin B. 2022; 12:3049-3062.
50. Kiriiri GK, Njogu PM, Mwangi AN. Exploring different approaches to improve the success of drug discovery and development projects: A review. Future J Pharmaceutical Sciences. 2020; 6:1-12.
51. Schieppati A, Henter JI, Daina E, Aperia A. Why rare diseases are an important medical and social issue. The Lancet. 2008; 371:2039-2041.
52. Stoller JK. The challenge of rare diseases. Chest. 2018; 153:1309-1314.
53. Groft SC, Posada de la Paz M. Preparing for the future of rare diseases. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2017; 1031:641-648.
54. Mohs RC, Greig NH. Drug discovery and development: Role of basic biological research. Alzheimers Dement (NY). 2017; 3:651-657.
55. Greener JG, Kandathil SM, Moffat L, Jones DT. A guide to machine learning for biologists. Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol. 2022; 23:40-55.
56. Paul D, Sanap G, Shenoy S, Kalyane D, Kalia K, Tekade RK. Artificial intelligence in drug discovery and development. Drug Discov Today. 2021; 26:80-93.
57. Mak KK, Pichika MR. Artificial intelligence in drug development: Present status and future prospects. Drug Discov Today. 2019; 24:773-780.
58. Chen W, Liu X, Zhang S, Chen S. Artificial intelligence for drug discovery: Resources, methods, and applications. Mol Ther Nucleic Acids. 2023; 31:691-702.
59. Romm EL, Tsigelny IF. Artificial intelligence in drug treatment. Annu Rev Pharmacol Toxicol. 2020; 60:353-369.
60. Keskinbora KH. Medical ethics considerations on artificial intelligence. J Clin Neurosci. 2019; 64:277-282.
61. Naik N, Hameed B M, Shetty D K, Swain D, Shah M, Paul R, Aggarwal K, Ibrahim S, Patil V, Smriti K, Shetty S, Rai BP, Chlosta P, Somani BK. Legal and ethical consideration in artificial intelligence in healthcare: who takes responsibility? Front Surg. 2022; 9:862322.
62. Safdar NM, Banja JD, Meltzer CC. Ethical considerations in artificial intelligence. European J Rdiol. 2020; 122:108768.

Received September 26, 2023; Revised November 28, 2023; Accepted December 22, 2023.

[§]These authors contributed equally to this work.
**Address correspondence to:*
Haiyin Wang, Shanghai Health Development Research Center (Shanghai Medical Information Center), No. 181, Xinbei Road, Minhang District, Shanghai 201199, China.
E-mail: wanghaiyin@shdrc.org

Jinying Su, Shanghai University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, No.1200 Cailun Road, Zhangjiang Hi-Tech Park, Pudong New Area, Shanghai 201203, China.
E-mail: szysujinying@163.com

Released online in J-STAGE as advance publication December 30, 2023.

Review

DOI: 10.5582/irdr.2023.01081

Situs viscerum inversus and abdominal aortic aneurysm: A systematic review of a rare association

Paolo Ossola[1,*], Federico Mascioli[2], Andrea Pierre Luzzi[3], Lorenzo Epis[4], Diego Coletta[5,6]

[1] Department of Surgery, Cardinal Massaia Hospital, Corso Dante Alighieri, Asti, Italy;
[2] Department of Surgery, Casa di Cura Privata Pierangeli Srl, Pescara, Italy;
[3] Department of Medicine DIMI, University of Genova, Genova, Italy;
[4] Department of Surgical Sciences DISC, University of Genova, Genova, Italy;
[5] Department of Surgical Sciences, Policlinico Umberto I University Hospital, Sapienza University of Rome, Rome, Italy;
[6] Hepatopancreatobiliary Surgery, IRCCS Regina Elena National Cancer Institute, Rome, Italy.

SUMMARY Situs viscerum inversus (SVI) is a very rare condition in that abdominal and thoracic organs are located reversed. Abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA) is a life-threatening pathology due to progressive aortic enlargement until the rupture. The association between SVI and AAA is very infrequent. The aim of this study is to identify the surgical procedures available to treat AAA in SVI. We performed a literature review of all studies about AAA in SVI patients, analyzing PubMed/MEDLINE, EMBASE, Web of Science (WOS), Google Scholar databases. The survey includes all publications until June 2023. The outcomes include demographic findings, type of surgical procedure, intraoperative and postoperative complications, follow-up. A total of 12 studies, including 12 patients, were considered eligible for the review. AAA mean size was 70.5 mm (range: 55–90 mm); the most common localization was in the infrarenal aortic portion. 6 studies reported data on elective surgery, and 6 on emergency procedures. In one case endovascular treatment was performed. No intraoperative complications are reported; 3 postoperative complications are registered. Medium follow-up period was 13.5 months (range: 3–60). According to the available literature, the treatment of AAA in SVI is feasible and does not show an incremented morbidity compared to patients with a normal visceral configuration. This treatment seems to be effective also in case of endovascular treatment. AAA treatment in SVI should be performed (especially in elective settings) in high volume centers where it is possible to bring on collaboration across different surgical specialists.

Keywords situs viscerum inversus, aortic aneurysm, surgery

1. Introduction

Situs viscerum inversus (SVI) is a rare congenital condition in which the organ's position is completely reversed, affecting both abdominal and thoracic compartments (*1,2*). The incidence of SVI ranges between 1:5,000 and 1:20,000 of newborns (*1*), with no evidence of gender inheritancy (*3*). This condition is due to a complete failure of the normal left-right asymmetry (*2*), even if the exact SVI etiology is yet unclear (*3*). To date, the most widely accepted theory is the deregulation of Sonic Hedgehog (Shh) protein during the third week of embryonic development (*4*), while it is known that the genetic deletions in KIF3-A or KIF3-B are responsible of alterations in visceral disposition within the abdomen/thorax (*2*).

Six risk factors were recently identified for SVI (*2*): *i*) family history of heart defects, *ii*) family history of noncardiac anomalies, *iii*) maternal diabetes, *iv*) antitussive use during pregnancy, *v*) paternal smoking, and *vi*) low socioeconomic status. Furthermore, SVI could be an incidental condition or could occur in conjunction with several pathological conditions such as primary ciliary dyskinesia, polysplenia, Ivermark's syndrome. The association between SVI and vascular anomalies are rareand, in particular, the prevalence of abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA) in SVI patients is currently unknown. When SVI is not associated with the anamnestic history of the patient, the preoperative study and the surgical procedure are not standardizable.

The aim of this systematic review is to highlight how AAA is diagnosed and treated when associated with SVI.

2. Literature search strategy

We conducted a systematic review of published studies in accordance with Preferred Reporting Items for Systematic Review and Meta-Analysis (PRISMA) guidelines (*5*) to identify studies reporting abdominal aortic aneurysm treatment in patients with SVI.

The population, intervention, comparator, outcome, and study design (PICOS) criteria are reported in Supplemental Table S1 (*https://www.irdrjournal.com/supplementaldata/178*). Supplemental Table S2 (*https://www.irdrjournal.com/supplementaldata/178*) reports the National Institutes of Health (NIH) quality assessment for each study considered for this research.

PubMed/MEDLINE, EMBASE, Web of Science (WOS), Google Scholar databases were surveyed using a combination of the following search terms: "situs viscerum inversus AND abdominal aortic aneurysm", "situs inversus AND aortic abdominal aneurysm", "situs organum inversus AND abdominal aortic aneurysm". The survey includes all publications until 30 June 2023.

All publications considering the AAA treatment in patients with SVI in both elective or emergency settings were considered for further selection. Full-text publications considered for inclusion were reviewed by two independent assessors (Paolo Ossola and Diego Coletta), and the references therein were further scrutined to find additional publications unreported in the previous survey. Only publications in English, Spanish or Italian language were selected. All concerns in the publications selected were discussed and consensus was sought across all authors. When agreement was not found, the publication of concern was excluded from the selection pool.

In accordance with the pre-established agreement, extracted data included: study design, country where the study was performed, date of publication, number of patients, age, gender, type of surgical procedure, intraoperative and postoperative complications, length of hospital stay (LOS), and follow-up. Results are reported as descriptive statistics with mean and minimum-maximum range.

3. Studies selection

The first literature survey resulted in 326 papers. After the first screening, 295 publications were excluded because off-topic title and abstract or duplicate. Eventually, 12 full-text publications (*4,6-16*), accounting for 12 patients, met the selection criteria and are included in our review (Figure 1): 10 are written in English (*4,7,8,10-16*), one in Spanish (*6*), and one in Italian (*9*).

4. Characteristics of studies

The studies selected are conducted in various countries: 5 studies are in Europe (*4,7-10*), 1 in the United State of America (*11*), 2 in Canada (*12,13*), 1 in China (*14*), 2 in Japan (*15,16*), and one in Colombia (*6*).

All the studies are case reports of a single patient. Surgery procedures are performed in general surgery division in 2 reports (*4,10*), vascular surgery departments in 5 cases (*7-9,11,14*), and 3 cases are treated in cardio-vascular departments (*13,15,16*). In 2 cases (*6,12*), a team of vascular and general surgery specialists performed the procedure.

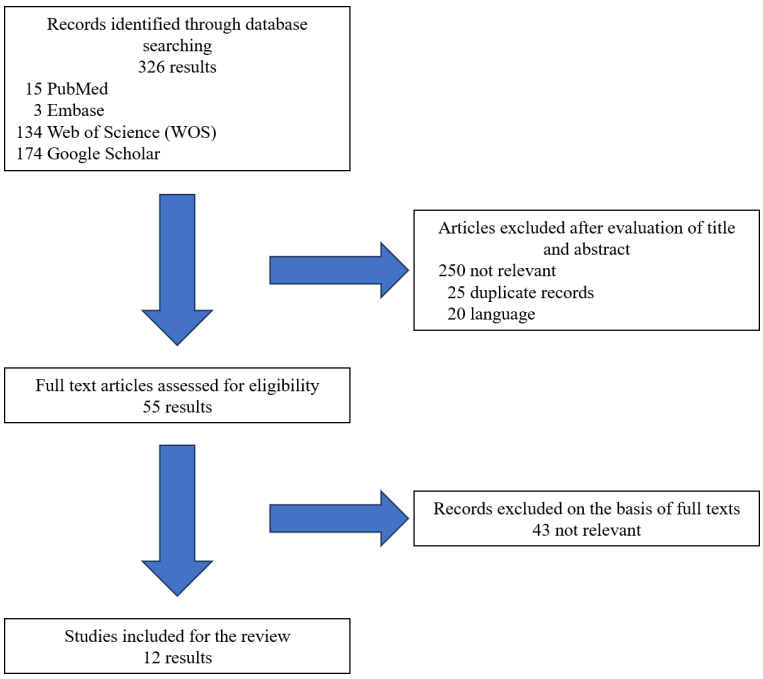


Figure 1. PRISMA flow-chart for studies selection.

5. Demographic findings

Demographic findings are reported in Table 1.

Pathological anamnesis is reported in 7 studies (*4,6-8,12,14,16*): 7 patients are affected by arterial hypertension (*4,6-8,12,14,16*), and two cases also by ischemic heart disease previously (*14,16*). AAA size is reported in 10 studies (*4,6-9,11,12-15*): the mean AAA diameter was 70.5 mm (range: 55-90 mm); also AAA localization is reported in all studies, and summarized in Figure 2. The most common localization in normal conformed patients is infrarenal aortic portion, and juxtarenal aneurysm accounts for about 15% (*17*). Our series, accounting 8 infrarenal aneurysms (*4,6,8,10,11,13-15*), 1 juxtarenal (*12*), 1 pararenal (*7*) and two infrarenal aneurysms associated with left common iliac artery aneurysm (*9,16*), didn't differ from data derived from normal conformed patients.

SVI was a known condition in 8 cases (*4,6,7,11-15*); in 3 patients (*8,9,16*), SVI were identify by a computed tomography scan contrast enhanced (CT) performed for prostate hypertrophy study (*8*), and for abdominal pain study (*9,16*). In one case (*10*), SVI was diagnosed by abdomen ultrasound scan (US) in a patient with abdominal pain.

6. Operative findings

The present review analyzed studies involving surgery in both elective and emergency settings: 6 studies reported data on elective surgery (*4,7,8,11,13,14*), and 6 on emergency procedures (*6,9,10,12,15,16*).

No intraoperative complications are reported. In 3 cases, patients experienced postoperative complications: a case of acute distal femoral, popliteal and pedidia right arteries ischemia during the immediate postoperative period treated with thromboendarterectomy (*6*); a respiratory failure associated with deep vein thrombosis of the right leg treated with warfarin therapy (*15*), and postoperative fever (*13*). All postoperative complications are reported in patients undergoing emergency surgery.

LOS is reported in 6 studies (*4,7,9,12,14,15*) with mean LOS of 12.5 days and a range of 3–46 days. Data on postoperative follow-up are reported in 8 studies (*4,6-8,13-16*) with a medium observation period of 13.5 months (range: 3–60)

7. Discussion

This systematic review focuses on the actual AAA treatment in patients with SVI. The extreme unlikelyhood

Table 1. Demographic findings of Literature

Author (*Ref*), Year	Country	Sex	Age (Years)	SIT known	Diagnosis of AAA	AAA dimension (mm)	AAA localization
Bonnelly (*4*), 2022	Spain	M	58	Yes	CT	56	infrarenal
Téllez-Beltrán (*6*), 2020	Colombia	F	56	Yes	US + CT	80	infrarenal
Gatta (*7*), 2020	Italy	M	73	Yes	US + CT	60	pararenal
Cwinn (*12*), 2016	Canada	F	82	Yes	CT	90	iuxtarenal
Riera Hernándeza (*8*), 2015	Spain	M	69	No	CT	60	infrarenal
Chan (*14*), 2010	China	M	81	Yes	CT	75	infrarenal
Kimura (*15*), 2008	Japan	F	80	Yes	CT	85	infrarenal
Kato (*16*), 2006	Japan	M	75	No	CT	na	infrarenal + left common iliac artery
Baccellieri (*9*), 2006	Italy	M	70	No	CT	55	infrarenal + left common iliac artery
Occhionorelli (*10*), 1998	Italy	F	76	No	US+CT	na	infrarenal
Huston (*11*), 1990	USA	M	84	Yes	CT	70	infrarenal
Ricci (*13*), 1989	Canada	M	79	Yes	US + arteriography	74	infrarenal

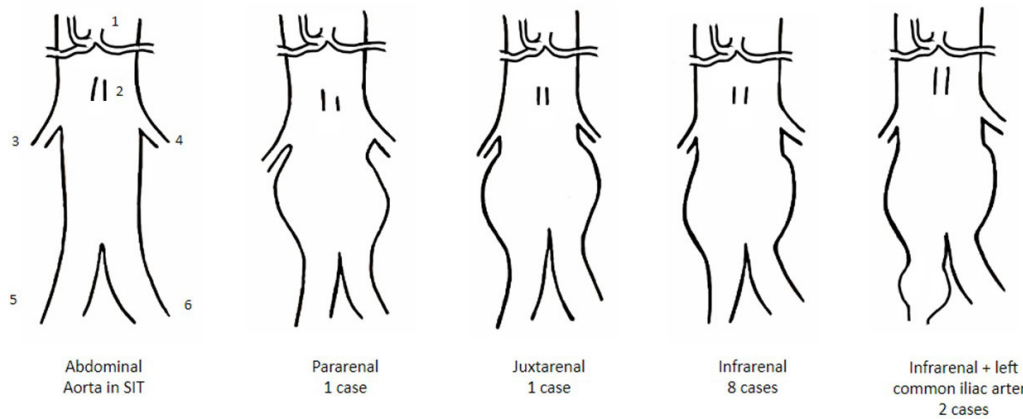


Figure 2. Conformation of normal aorta in SVI and type of AAA in SVI reported in Literature. 1: celiac trunk; 2: superior mesenteric artery; 3: left renal artery; 4: right renal artery; 5: left common iliac artery; 6: right common iliac artery.

of this condition is evident in the low literature studies on the topic: in our survey we identified only 12 studies (*4,6-16*) reporting data on 12 patients.

7.1. Clinical presentation

In people with normal visceral anatomy, the clinic presentation of AAA varies: in some cases it could be completely asymptomatic, in this situation AAA is an incidental finding during routine exams. In fact, AAA is due to a progressive enlargement of the abdominal aortic diameter, with the stretch of all three artery layers, determining a thin and weak aortic wall (*18*). In other cases, patients complain of abdominal pain or hemorrhagic shocks: the main complication of AAA, and in general of an artery aneurysm, is its rupture with hemoperitoneum (or hemo-retroperitoneum) with hemorrhagic shock and death (*19*).

SVI could represent only a variation of a normal anatomy with no alteration in life and health expectancy of the patient being an occasional finding during routine clinical exams. Otherwise, SVI could be an aspect of a group of pathological conditions defined as "syndromic conditions". The most common syndromic conditions are primary ciliary dyskinesia, polysplenia, and Ivermark's syndrome.

Cardiac malformations are not infrequent in SVI patients (3–9%) (*2*); while the most common vascular anomalies are the interrupted inferior vena cava (20%) and preduodenal portal vein (42%) (*2*). In the rare case of SVI, AAA could appear also as an intestinal occlusion (*20*).

7.2. Diagnosis

AAA diagnosis is obtained through US and contrast enhancement CT: obviously, the same techniques allow to detect any anomalies in the organs topology in the body. So, often, AAA and SVI are diagnosed at the same time.

US is a first level tool able to identify AAA, its localization along the aorta, describe the diameter, the status (*i.e.* the rupture or the fissuring), and the blood flow inside the aneurysm sac. US is fast, does not need injection of any contrast fluids, and does not expose the patient to ionizing radiations. The main limit of US is that the sensibility of this technique is linked to the operator ability; nevertheless, US is a gold standard in the follow-up, particularly in case of young or female patients, avoiding radiation exposure (*21*). CT scan with vascular acquisitions is mandatory in the definitive description and for treatment planning. If AAA is associated with SVI, CT allows to identify the anomalies in organs location, to verify the presence of vascular anomalies, that is, anomalies in vein or artery number, or course.

In the literature, 11 cases (*4,6-12,14-16*) underwent preoperative CT, in one case AAA was diagnosed with US and arteriography (*13*): this last case was treated in1989 when CT was not largely available. CT remains the most relevant imaging method for AAA and SVI diagnosis at the same time.

7.3. Treatment

In patients with normal disposition of internal organs, unruptured AAA is treated when the diameter is ≥ 5.5 cm in male or ≥ 5 cm in female or when the growth rate is ≥ 0.5 cm in 6 months (*22*). When ruptured, AAA treatment is mandatory in emergency settings. In case of SVI, the indications for AAA treatment are the same as in normal patients.

In the surveyed publications, the mean AAA diameter was 70.5 mm (range: 55–90 mm), 6 cases (*6,9,10,12,15,16*) were treated in emergency settings, and 6 (*4,7,8,11,13,14*) cases were planned as elective procedures. Technical approaches for AAA vary: in this work 11 cases (*4,6-13,15,16*) were treated with open approach with aneurysmectomy and graft interposition. Chan *et al.* (*14*) reported the first case of AAA in SVI endovascular repair: the 81 years-old patient with a medical history of SVI and previous abdominal surgery for colon cancer, was treated with a Cook Zenith endovascular device and discharged on 3rd postoperative day without complications. Chan *et al.* (*14*) affirmed that endovascular repair is safe and feasible also in case of SVI, with not specific difficulties compared to normal-topology patients. Certainly, endovascular approaches should be reserved in high expertise and large volume vascular Departments.

Laparotomic approach for AAA in SVI patients was performed by general and vascular surgeons, especially in emergency conditions. In our series 2 cases (*6,12*) were treated by a multidisciplinary surgical team consisting of general and vascular surgeons, 5 patients (*7-9,11,14*) by vascular surgeons, 2 cases (*4,10*) by general surgeons, 3 cases (*13,15,16*) by cardio-vascular surgeons. The possibility to treat complex cases by multispecialistic teams (*e.g.* general and vascular surgery, cardio-vascular surgery, or other), represent an advantage in terms of safety and good results of the surgical procedure.

7.4. Complications

Interestingly, no intraoperative complications are registered: this finding could be explained considering that AAA in SVI is a very rare condition and preferably treated in high volume and expertise centers. On the other hand, because AAAs in SVI are treated also in emergency settings, the absence of intraoperative complications could reflect the absence of technical differences compared to AAA in normal conformed patients.

Postoperative complications are registered in emergency conditions: Beltran *et al.* (*6*) reported a case of acute distal femoral-popliteal and pedidia right arteries ischemia treated with thromboembolectomy throw the femoral artery with complete ischemia resolution. The patient described by Kimura *et al.* (*15*) developed respiratory failure and deep vein thrombosis of the right leg; the patient was extubated on 14 postoperative day with anticoagulation therapy with warfarin continued for the deep vein thrombosis. Ricci *et al.* (*13*) reported a postoperative course complicated by transitory fever, that could be due to the body reaction to the graft.

Operative time is reported in only 2 studies: Beltran *et al.* (*6*): 96 minutes and Kimura *et al.* (*15*) 190 minutes: for this reason it is not possible to know if SVI increases the operative time. The median LOS was 12.5 days (range 3–46) and is reported in 6 studies (*4,7,9,12,14,15*).

7.5. Follow-up

Follow-up is mandatory to early identify graft leak, the graft thrombosis, or rupture; in our review the mean follow-up resulted in 13.5 months (range: 3–60), and was reported in 8 studies (*4,6,7,8,13-16*). CT is the gold standard for imaging follow-up, even if also US could be adopted in order to reduce radiological exposition. As of today, no specific protocols are available for AAA in SVI follow-up.

8. Conclusion

The analysis of the scientific literature shows that the treatment of AAA in SVI is feasible and does not show an incremented morbidity compared to patients with a normal visceral configuration. This treatment seems to be effective also in case of endovascular treatment. The preoperative imaging study with CT is mandatory before performing any invasive treatment in SVI patients, in order to identify potential alteration in the vessels course. However, the AAA treatment in SVI should be performed (especially in elective settings) in high volume centers where it is possible to bring on collaboration across different surgical specialists, such as general, vascular and cardio-vascular surgeons. Further studies are necessary to explore the role of endovascular techniques in SVI.

Funding: None.

Conflict of Interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

1. Multani A, Parmar S, Dixon E. Laparoscopic *vs.* robotic gastrectomy in patients with situs inversus totalis: A systematic review. Minim Invasive Surg. 2023; 2023:3894561.
2. Eitler K, Bibok A, Telkes G. Situs inversus totalis: A clinical review. Int J Gen Med. 2022; 15:2437-2449.
3. Amankwa NA, Adomako EK, Obodai EO, Afriyie-Ansah SP. Situs inversus totalis in a 34-year-old diabetic woman. A case report. Radiol Case Rep. 2022; 18:704-708.
4. Bonnelly O, Peña R, Carnicero J. Infrarenal abdominal aortic aneurysm in a patient with situs inversus totalis and its therapeutic implications. Angiología 2022; 74:253-256.
5. Moher D, Liberati A, Tetzlaff J, Altman DG; PRISMA Group. Preferred reporting items for systematic reviews and meta-analyses: the PRISMA statement. BMJ. 2009; 339:b2535
6. Téllez-Beltrán D, González-Muñoz A, Barón-Cifuentes V, Pradilla-Gómez JM. Abdominal aortic aneurysm in a patient with situs inversus totalis. Cir Cir. 2020; 88(Suppl 1):79-82.
7. Gatta E, Schiavon S, Pagliariccio G, Persechini P, Carbonari L. Pararenal aortic aneurysm in situs inversus totalis: open repair with right retroperitoneal approach. J Surg Case Rep. 2020; 2020:rjaa197.
8. Riera Hernández C, Pérez Ramírez P, Esteban Gracia C, Jiménez Olivera MA, Llagostera Pujol S. Situs inversus totalis and abdominal aortic aneurysm: Surgical repair of an extremely uncommon association. Int J Surg Case Rep. 2015; 10:216-218.
9. Baccellieri D, Mirenda F, Mandolfino T, La Spada M, Stilo F, Spinelli F. Symptomatic aorto-iliac aneurysm and situs viscerum inversus: Case report. Chir Ital. 2006; 58:113-116. (in Italian)
10. Occhionorelli S, Navarra G, Santini M, Carcoforo P, Sartori A, Pollinzi V, Mascoli F. Symptomatic abdominal aortic aneurysm and "situs viscerum inversus." Diagnostic and therapeutic approach. J Cardiovasc Surg (Torino). 1998; 39:31-33.
11. Huston J, Nicholas G. Situs inversus totalis and an infrarenal abdominal aortic aneurysm: Case report. Vascular and Endovascular Surgery. 1990; 24:372-374.
12. Cwinn M, Morzycki A, Lee M, Midgley P. Repair of a juxtarenal abdominal aortic aneurysm in a patient with situs inversus totalis using a retroperitoneal approach, Journal of Vascular Surgery Cases, Innovations and Techniques, 2016; 2:92-94.
13. Ricci MA, Deshmukh N. Situs inversus and abdominal aortic aneurysm — A case report. Vascular and Endovascular Surgery. 1989; 23:413-416.
14. Chan YC, Ting AC, Qing KX, Cheng SW. Successful endovascular infrarenal aneurysm repair in a patient with situs inversus totalis. Ann Vasc Surg. 2010; 24:1134.e5-7.
15. Kimura N, Kawahito K, Ito S. Rupture of an abdominal aortic aneurysm in a patient with a situs inversus totalis: Report of a case. Surg Today. 2008; 38:249-252.
16. Kato T, Takagi H, Sekino S, Manabe H, Matsuno Y, Umemoto T. Abdominal aortic aneurysm in situs inversus totalis. Ann Vasc Surg. 2006; 20:267-270.
17. Jongkind V, Yeung KK, Akkersdijk GJ, Heidsieck D, Reitsma JB, Tangelder GJ, Wisselink W. Juxtarenal aortic aneurysm repair. J Vasc Surg. 2010; 52:760-767.
18. Liu Z. Editorial: Abdominal aortic aneurysms: advancements in diagnosis, biomarkers, drug therapeutics, surgical and endovascular treatment. Front Cardiovasc Med. 2023; 10:1218335.
19. Silvestri V, Sapienza P, Ossola P, Grande R, Brachini G, Sterpetti AV, Mingoli A. Ruptured superior mesenteric

artery aneurysm due to fibromuscular dysplasia: A rare vascular presentation in a patient with schizophrenia. Ann Vasc Surg. 2019; 58:384.e5-384.e8.
20. Bhama JK, Ogren J, Guinn G, Fisher WE. Unique cause of duodenal obstruction by an abdominal aortic aneurysm. J Vasc Surg. 2001; 34:1130-1132.
21. Ossola P, Mascioli F, Coletta D. Laparoscopic and robotic surgery for splenic artery aneurysm: A systematic review. Ann Vasc Surg. 2020; 68:527-535.
22. Isselbacher EM, Preventza O, Hamilton Black J 3rd, *et al.* 2022 ACC/AHA Guideline for the Diagnosis and Management of Aortic Disease: A Report of the American Heart Association/American College of Cardiology Joint Committee on Clinical Practice Guidelines. Circulation. 2022; 146:e334-e482.

Received September 16, 2023; Revised November 3, 2023; Accepted December 26, 2023.

**Address correspondence to:*
Paolo Ossola, Department of Surgery, Cardinal Massaia Hospital, Corso Dante Alighieri, 202, 14100 Asti, Italy.
E-mail: paolo.ossola90@gmail.com

Released online in J-STAGE as advance publication December 28, 2023.

Original Article

DOI: 10.5582/irdr.2023.01100

Systematic analysis and evaluation of chromosome aberrations in major birth defects associated with infertility

Fuying Lan[1], Zhongzhong Chen[1,2,*], Xiaoling Lin[1,*]

[1] Department of Urology, Shanghai Children's Hospital, School of Medicine, Shanghai Jiao Tong University, Shanghai, China;
[2] Urogenital Development Research Center, Shanghai Children's Hospital, School of Medicine, Shanghai Jiao Tong University, Shanghai, China.

SUMMARY Previous studies have indicated an elevated risk of infertility in certain birth defects, including congenital heart disease (CHD), hypospadias, cryptorchidism, and disorders of sexual development (DSD). Although the identification of chromosomal abnormalities or chromosomal aberrations (CAs) is crucial for the diagnosis of these conditions, the assessment of CAs in these disorders remains unclear, and few large-scale studies have been conducted at multiple centers. The aim of the current study was to systematically evaluate the prevalence of CAs in CHD, hypospadias, cryptorchidism, and DSD. Studies reporting CAs in these birth defects were retrospectively analyzed from 1991-2023, using online databases such as PubMed and Google scholar as well as preprints and references from related literature. Comprehensive screening, data acquisition, and systematic assessments of the identified literature were performed. Ultimately, searches yielded a total of 7,356 samples from 14 published articles on CHD, 298 hypospadias cases from 4 published articles, 1,681 cryptorchidism cases from 4 published articles, and 2,876 DSD cases from 7 published articles. Carrier rates of CAs varied widely among these studies and conditions. A retrospective analysis revealed that CHD was associated with the highest carrier rate (26%) for CAs, followed by DSD (21%), hypospadias (9%), and cryptorchidism (5%). A subtype analysis of CAs indicated a higher prevalence of numerical abnormalities among the reported cases. Therefore, considering CAs in birth defects associated with infertility is imperative. This provides a foundation for the further clinical implementation of chromosomal screening and enhancing high-risk screening for individuals in the real world.

Keywords chromosomal aberration, birth defects, infertility

1. Introduction

Birth defects are a physiological or structural abnormality at birth that can arise from various factors, including developmental defects, infection, and heredity. Approximately 6% of newborns worldwide are affected by birth defects, ranging from treatable cases to severe conditions that significantly impact lifelong health (*1*). This issue has become a crucial determinant of population quality, particularly as several countries have experienced a significant decline in birth rates over the past few decades. In China, for example, the birth rate has noticeably decreased from 14‰ to 6.8‰ since 2000, accompanied by a decline in fertility and a changing profiling of major birth defects (*2*). Birth defects such as congenital heart disease (CHD) and hypospadias are associated with infertility (*2*), uncovering factors contributing to reduced fertility rates. In addition, disorders that affect the endocrine and reproductive systems such as androgen insensitivity syndrome (AIS) (*3*), a common disorder of disorders of sex development (DSD), may also have significant impacts on fertility. Chromosomal aberrations (CAs), consisting of numerical and structural chromosome abnormalities, are a common characteristic of severely clinical consequences such as spontaneous abortion, death, and birth defects (*4,5*). CAs are also associated with disorders of reproductive and sexual development (*5,6*). Numerical CAs, mainly including aneuploidy, are caused by chromosome segregation errors in mitosis, whereas structural CAs in the form of chromosomal fragments, rearrangements, chromosomal translocations, and heterozygous deletions are the result of DNA damage and arm-level chromosome gain or loss (*7,8*). Despite many studies focusing on the identification of associated genes using whole-exome sequencing, there remains a lack of multicenter studies on CAs. Therefore, the aim of the current study was to systematically assess the prevalence of CAs in these four birth defects that affect fertility, offering fundamental insights for the future clinical

implementation of chromosomal screening.

2. Literature search strategies and analytical methods

2.1. Search strategies

This systematic review was conducted following the PRISMA guideline (*9*). PubMed and Google scholar were used to search for articles published between 1991 and 2023 by two authors with the keywords "chromosome aberrations", "chromosomal disorder", "congenital heart disease", "hypospadias", "cryptorchidism", and "disorders of sex development". In addition, the references of the articles were reviewed to identify potentially relevant studies and ensure comprehensive coverage of the relevant literature. Only English-language literature was considered for analysis. Two reviewers independently evaluated the eligibility of the articles based on the following criteria: (a) assessment of the association between these types of birth defects and CAs; (b) availability of original data from randomized controlled trials, non-randomized controlled clinical trials, prospective and retrospective cohort studies, and case-control studies; and (c) the incidence of CAs for which data were available or could be obtained from the given data. Potentially eligible studies were excluded if they were: (a) conference papers or editorials; (b) case reports and case series; (c) repetitions and literature with missing or insufficient information, and (d) articles published before 1990. A full-text review was subsequently conducted for data extraction from all remaining studies. The name of the first author, year of publication, source, sample size, and number of CAs were recoded for each included study. In cases where a consensus could not be reached on study eligibility, a third reviewer was consulted.

2.2. Data analysis

Both a common-effect model and random-effects model were used to provide pooled estimates of the incidence of these four birth defects. The common-effect model assumes uniformity of the true effect across studies, while the random-effects model accounts for substantial variation in effect sizes by incorporating it into the standard errors. While we are confident in the comprehensiveness of our search strategy, not all conducted studies may have been included. The random-effects model addresses this by assuming that our sample is representative of all existing studies, including those that may not have been published or completed. For each complication of interest, the pooled incidence was computed along with a 95% confidence interval (CI). The I^2 statistic was used as an indicator of study heterogeneity. The I^2 statistic was reported for each pooled estimate as a measure of study heterogeneity, with values of $p \geq 0.100$ and $I^2 \leq 25.0\%$ indicating good homogeneity between studies and an I^2 greater than 50% suggesting substantial study heterogeneity. Event rates were calculated in R with the metafor package (*10*).

3. Results

3.1. Summary of the systematic literature search

Figures 1-4 depict the PRISMA diagrams illustrating the systematic literature retrieval process for CHD, hypospadias, cryptorchidism, and DSD, respectively. Table 1 provides a summary of the outcomes documented in the included publications concerning these conditions. All studies included in the analysis were published between 1991 and 2023.

For CHD, a total of 622 records were included in the initial search after removing duplicate articles (Figure 1). Ultimately, 14 publications met the inclusion criteria, and 7,356 cases were included. The incidence of CAs ranged from 9-59%.

For hypospadias, the initial search resulted in 297 records after removing duplicate articles (Figure 2). Ultimately, 4 publications met the inclusion criteria, and 298 cases were included. The incidence of CAs ranged from 4-12%.

For cryptorchidism, a total of 275 records were included in the initial search after removing duplicate articles (Figure 3). Ultimately, 4 publications met the inclusion criteria, and 1,681 cases were included. The incidence of CAs ranged from 3-8%.

For DSD, a total of 67 records were included in the initial search after removing duplicate articles (Figure 4). Eventually, 7 publications met the inclusion criteria, and 2,876 cases were included. The incidence of CAs ranged widely from 10-43%.

3.2. Incidence of CAs

The combined results of the incidence of CAs in CHD, hypospadias, cryptorchidism, and DSD was also calculated (Table 1). Fourteen studies reported CAs in CHD, resulting in a total of 1,204 CA events out of 7,356 included cases. The total pooled incidence of CAs for CHD was 26% (95% CI, 19-34%, $I^2 = 97\%$; Figure 5).

For hypospadias, a total of 26 CAs were detected in 298 included cases. The overall pooled incidence of CAs for hypospadias was 9% (95% CI, 6-13%, $I^2 = 19\%$; Figure 6).

Four studies reported CAs in the context of cryptorchidism, with a total of 78 CA events in 1,681 included cases. The total pooled incidence of CAs for cryptorchidism was 5% (95% CI, 3-7%, $I^2 = 83\%$; Figure 7).

For DSD, four studies reported CAs, resulting in 567 CA events out of 2,876 included cases. The total pooled incidence of CAs for DSD was 21% (95% CI, 14-31%, $I^2 = 97\%$; Figure 8).

Table 1. Summary of study characteristics and CA carrier results in the included studies

Diseases	PMID	Authors (Year published)	Incidence (%)	N	Sample size
CHD	12797095	Allan *et al*. (1991)	16	77	467
	36011280	Okashah *et al.* (2022)	59	16	27
	35169781	Atli *et al.* (2021)	22	5	23
	34988127	Zhang *et al*. (2021)	26	279	1,089
	34098741	Chelliah *et al*. (2021)	46	37	80
	18512234	Rosa *et al*. (2008)	14	29	204
	33345990	Mustafa *et al*. (2020)	37	80	217
	33247990	Tomotaki *et al*. (2021)	56	25	45
	32371943	Qiu *et al*. (2020)	20	48	235
	30558042	Cai *et al*. (2018)	13	19	146
	30133550	Luo *et al*. (2018)	39	140	362
	25497206	Stoll *et al*. (2015)	9	354	4,005
	24145389	Trevisan *et al*. (2013)	17	50	298
	1590238	Smythe *et al*. (1992)	28	45	158
	Current study		26[a]	1,204	7,356
Hypospadias	12394752	Moreno-Garcia *et al*. (2002)	7	7	100
	29473028	González *et al*. (2018)	4	2	49
	1514208	Yabumoto *et al*. (1992)	12	16	131
	1686509	Yamaguchi *et al.* (1991)	6	1	18
	Current study		9[b]	26	298
Cryptorchidism	12394752	Moreno-Garcia *et al*. (2002)	3	26	916
	1686509	Yamaguchi *et al.* (1991)	5	4	83
	8738627	Sasagawa I *et al*. (1996)	4	7	160
	32293821	Sharifi N *et al*. (2020)	8	41	522
	Current study		5[a]	78	1,681
DSD	34036105	Benchikh *et al*. (2021)	15	154	1,005
	29581155	Kohva *et al*. (2018)	37	204	550
	22644991	Öcal *et al*. (2012)	27	78	285
	32282607	Dhamankar *et al*. (2020)	23	7	30
	29996319	Yi P *et al*. (2018)	43	23	53
	36419940	Man E *et al*. (2023)	11	68	607
	27754965	Ganie *et al*. (2016)	10	33	346
	Current study		21[a]	567	2,876

PMID, PubMed Unique Identifier; CAs, chromosomal abnormalities or chromosomal aberrations; N, number; CHD, congenital heart disease; DSD, disorders of sexual development; [a], incidence was calculated based on a random effects model; [b], incidence was calculated based on a common effect model.

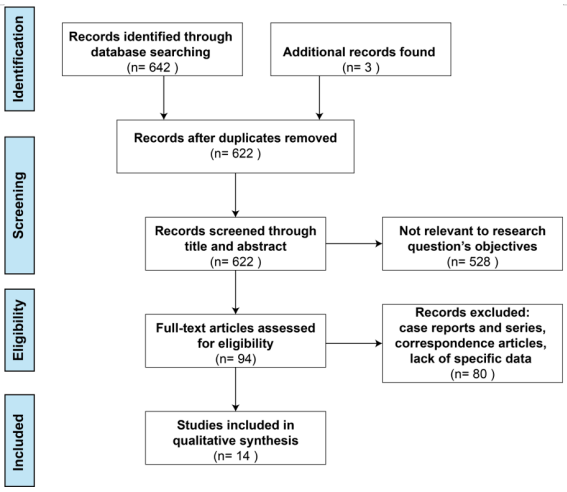


Figure 1. PRISMA flowchart of a systematic literature search for CHD.

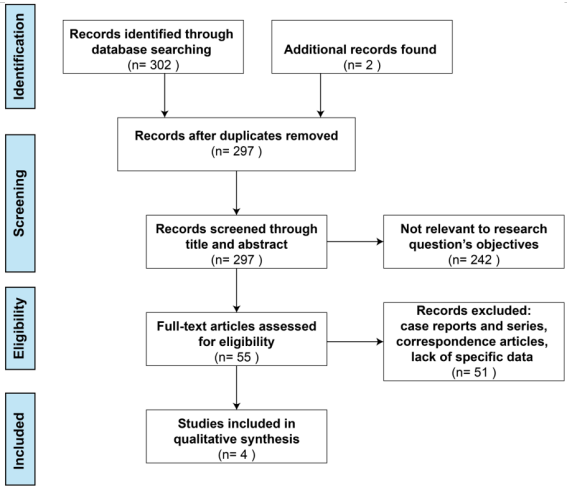


Figure 2. PRISMA flowchart of a systematic literature search for hypospadias.

3.3. Subtypes of CAs in fertility-related birth defects

Table 2 shows the subtypes of CAs detected in four birth defects affecting fertility, excluding cases without specific subtypes of CAs. As shown in the table, there was a higher frequency of autosomal chromosome

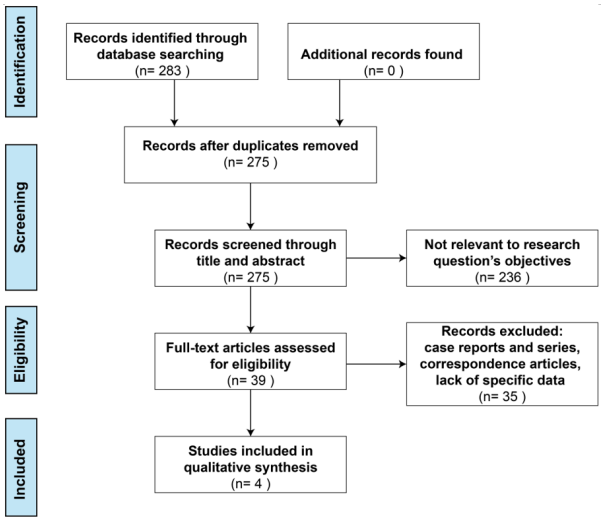


Figure 3. PRISMA flowchart of a systematic literature search for cryptorchidism.

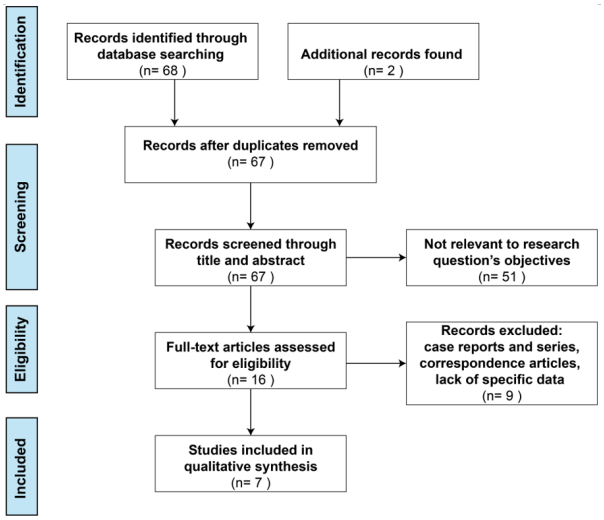


Figure 4. PRISMA flowchart of the systematic literature search for DSD.

abnormalities in CHD cases compared to sex CAs (94.80% *vs.* 5.20%, respectively). Among autosomal CAs in CHD cases, numerical abnormalities constituted the majority (70.65%), with trisomy 21 and trisomy 18 being the most common subtypes of CAs, accounting for 40.96% and 22.70%, respectively. In contrast to CHD, there was a higher incidence of sex CAs in patients with DSD, with 92.59% of cases exhibiting numerical abnormalities. Notable subtypes of CAs in DSD included Turner syndrome, Klinefelter syndrome, and mixed gonadal dysgenesis, respectively accounting for 37.04%, 26.10%, and 29.45%.

The studies on hypospadias and cryptorchidism yielded limited information on karyotype patterns, with sex CAs accounting for 69.23% and 60.26%, respectively; numerical abnormalities were the major subtype. In the context of sex chromosome numerical abnormalities in hypospadias and cryptorchidism, Klinefelter syndrome was the predominant type,

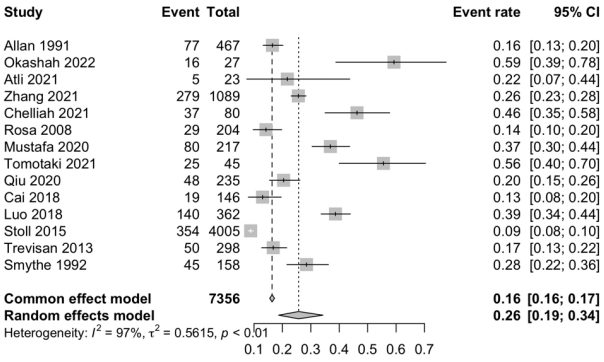


Figure 5. Forest plot and pooled analysis of CA events in CHD

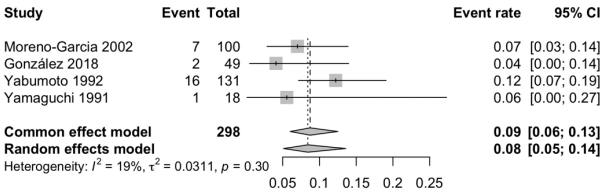


Figure 6. Forest plot and pooled analysis of CA events in hypospadias.

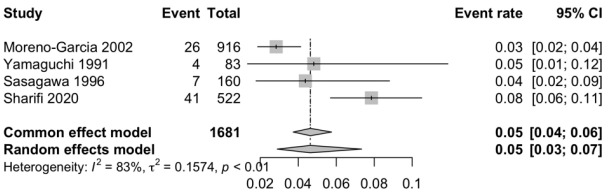


Figure 7. Forest plot and pooled analysis of CA events in cryptorchidism.

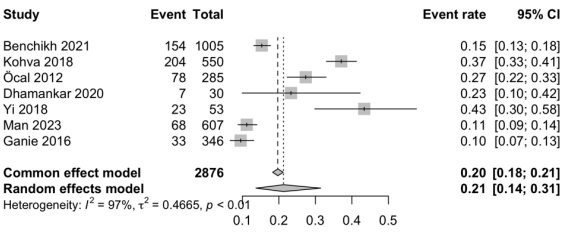


Figure 8. Forest plot and pooled analysis of CA events in DSD.

respectively accounting for 19.23% and 51.28%.

4. Discussion

Over the past two decades, there have been significant advancements in prenatal diagnosis technology, coinciding with notable shifts in the profiling of birth defects. CHD and hypospadias, both of which increase the risk of infertility, have progressively emerged as the major birth defects (*2*). CAs represent a common genetic cause of birth defects, exhibiting considerable diversity in samples across different regions for CHD, hypospadias, cryptorchidism, and DSD (Table 1). However, there has been a lack of a systematic assessment of the impact of CAs on these four birth defects, and a dearth of

Table 2. The distribution of types of chromosome abnormalities in four birth defects

Classification	CHD		Hypospadias		Cryptorchidism		DSD	
	N	%	N	%	N	%	N	%
Autosomal chromosome abnormalities	1,111	94.80	8	30.77	31	39.74	42	7.41
Numerical abnormalities	828	70.65	1	3.85	6	7.69	5	0.88
Trisomy 18	266	22.70	1	3.85	1	1.28	0	0.00
Trisomy 21	480	40.96	0	0.00	1	1.28	1	0.18
Trisomy 13	75	6.40	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00
Others	7	0.60	0	0.00	4	5.13	4	0.71
Structural abnormalities	170	14.51	1	3.85	25	32.05	37	6.53
Translocations	21	1.79	1	3.85	8	10.26	16	2.82
Duplications	6	0.51	0	0.00	1	1.28	0	0.00
Deletions	103	8.79	0	0.00	1	1.28	3	0.53
Inversions	3	0.26	0	0.00	13	16.67	18	3.17
Ring-chromosome	3	0.26	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00
Chromosomal polymorphisms	9	0.77	0	0.00	2	2.56	0	0.00
Others	25	2.13	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00
Not classified*	113	9.64	6	23.08	0	0.00	0	0.00
Sex chromosome abnormalities	61	5.20	18	69.23	47	60.26	525	92.59
Numerical abnormalities	34	2.90	7	26.92	46	58.97	525	92.59
Klinefelter syndrome	2	0.17	5	19.23	40	51.28	148	26.10
Turner syndrome	30	2.56	0	0.00	6	7.69	210	37.04
Triple X syndrome	2	0.17	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00
Mixed gonadal dysgenesis	0	0.00	2	7.69	0	0.00	167	29.45
Structural abnormalities	1	0.09	0	0.00	1	1.28	0	0.00
Deletions	0	0.00	0	0.00	1	1.28	0	0.00
Inversions	1	0.09	0	0.00	0	0.00	0	0.00
Not classified*	26	2.22	11	42.31	0	0.00	0	0.00
Total (excluded ambiguous)	1,172	100	26	100.00	78	100.00	567	100.00

N, number; CAs, chromosomal abnormalities or chromosomal aberrations; CHD, congenital heart disease; DSD, disorders of sexual development.
*The studies provided only the autosomal or sex CA information in cases but no further detailed information about the subtype of CAs.

multicenter studies examining CAs persists. As a result, our focus was directly on these four birth defects, all of which could potentially affect fertility in adulthood. A systematic evaluation of the prevalence of CAs and their subtypes in these disorders was performed.

Results revealed a high incidence of CAs in genomes associated with fertility-related diseases. The respective prevalence of CAs in CHD, hypospadias, cryptorchidism, and DSD was 26%, 9%, 5% and 21%, with CHD exhibiting the highest prevalence and cryptorchidism the lowest. CAs can result in severe phenotypes, such as CHD and DSD. CAs are categorized into numerical and structural abnormalities based on the mechanisms of chromosome segregation errors or DNA damage (*7,8*). Numerical CAs were the predominant anomalies observed in cases of CHD, cryptorchidism, and DSD, respectively accounting for 73.55%, 66.67%, and 93.47%. Numerical CAs typically involve deviations in the number of chromosomes from the normal karyotype due to misallocation during mitosis or cell division blockage. Numerical CAs mainly include aneuploidy, triploidy, and tetraploidy in humans. Given that systemic triploidy is usually fatal for humans, triploid fetuses typically result in eventual abortion (*11*). Aneuploidy, characterized by the gain or loss of chromatid or chromosome regions, represents the primary form of numerical CAs in clinical settings, contributing to conditions such as trisomy 21, trisomy 18, and Turner syndrome, which were found to be prevalent in CHD and DSD cases. In cases of CAs related to CHD, numerical abnormalities were frequently observed in euchromosome, accounting for 70.65%. And in DSD cases of CAs, the vast majority (92.59%) involved the sex chromosomes.

Numerical CAs of DSD are frequently associated with conditions such as Turner syndrome, Klinefelter syndrome, Triple X syndrome, Jacob's syndrome, mixed gonadal dysgenesis, and chimerism. Turner syndrome represents the most prevalent sex-related CAs and is the major genetic cause of primary amenorrhoea in women. Its typical karyotype is 45,X, but variations can include karyotypes such as 45,X/46,XX, 45,X/46XY, and 45,X/47,XXX (*12*). Clinical presentations often include a short stature, gonadal insufficiency, primary or secondary amenorrhea, infertility, micrognathia, low-protruding ears, a short neck, and elbow ectropion (*13,14*). Klinefelter's syndrome usually manifests with a chromosomal karyotype of 47,XXY, and variants can include karyotypes such as 48,XXXY, 49,XXXXY, and 46,XY/47,XXY (*15*). Patients may exhibit a tall stature, narrow shoulders, wide hips, sparse body hair, gynecomastia, small testes, androgen deficiency, learning disabilities, and delayed speech development (*13*). In Triple X syndrome with a karyotype 47,XXX, patients may clinically exhibit increased height and an elevated risk of learning disabilities, delayed speech, language, and motor skills development, weak muscle tone, behavioral and emotional difficulties, seizures,

and renal abnormalities (*14,15*). However, some cases of Jacob's syndrome may not present with any discernible phenotypic abnormalities. Jacob's syndrome is characterized by a karyotype of 47,XYY. Clinically, patients with this syndrome typically have an increased height, an elevated risk of learning disabilities, delayed development of speech, language, and motor skills, dystonic weakness, hand tremors, seizures, asthma, scoliosis, as well as behavioral and emotional difficulties (*14,15*). Similar to triple X syndrome, certain cases of Jacob's syndrome may present without noticeable phenotypic anomalies.

45,X/46,XY is a mixed gonadal hypoplasia syndrome characterized by a wide range of clinical phenotypes, spanning from females with Turner syndrome to phenotypically normal males with genital abnormalities and a short stature. Gonadal function appears to be adequate for spontaneous puberty in most 45,X/46,XY males. The etiology of its development is yet to be fully understood, although a widely accepted hypothesis suggests that it results from the nondisjunction or structural rearrangement of the Y chromosome during either fertilized egg division or early embryonic cell division (*16*). During mitosis, a delayed separation or rearrangement of the Y chromosome can generate three distinct cell lineages, 45,X, 46,XY, and 47,XYY, with trisomic cells often being lost in subsequent divisions, while 45,X and 46,XY cells are more likely to persist. During the segregation of sister chromatids of the Y chromosome, a break may occur in the palindrome or inverted repeat region, followed by a homologous exchange of sister chromatids, leading to structural abnormalities of the Y chromosome if this process is disrupted.

Structural CAs encompass a variety of alterations, such as deletions, duplications, inversions, translocations, insertions, isochromosomes, ring chromosomes, and chromosomal polymorphisms. Although not the primary form of CAs in fertility-related birth defects, chromosomal structural abnormalities account for 33.33% of CAs in cases of cryptorchidism. Chromosomal polymorphisms are minor structural aberrations in human chromosomes, primarily occurring in regions with highly repetitive DNA sequences but not in coding regions. Generally considered to have no clinical effects, these polymorphisms tend to emerge in highly repetitive sequences with no transcriptional activity. However, a recent study has suggested that chromosomal polymorphisms within the heterochromatin region could potentially lead to abnormalities during chromosome division and gamete production, ultimately resulting in abnormal embryonic development (*17*). Nevertheless, such chromosomal polymorphisms are rarely associated with fertility-related birth defects, accounting for only 0.77% of CAs in individuals with CHD and 2.56% of CAs in individuals with cryptorchidism. Such chromosomal polymorphisms were not found in the other two disorders. The most recent data on the impact of chromosomal polymorphisms on the reproductive outcomes of couples undergoing intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI) treatment, based on 929 fresh and frozen embryo transfer cycles involving 692 women, did not reveal any disparities in reproductive outcomes between carriers and non-carriers of any type or number of chromosomal polymorphisms (*18*).

This retrospective analysis may be limited by the limited data available in the included literature. First, the analysis is influenced by the inclusion of studies with small sample sizes rather than large cohort populations. Second, the exclusion of certain articles due to unavailable or incomplete data could result in the omission of important studies.

The current study aimed to investigate the connections between fertility-related birth defects and CAs. Despite the reduced emphasis on chromosomal analysis, guidelines still recommend its utilization. The results of this study highlight its effectiveness in studying reproductive disorders. In addition, chromosome analysis in individuals diagnosed with reproductive diseases plays a significant role in the expanding field of preimplantation genetic diagnosis (PGD).

Funding: This work was supported by grants from the National Natural Science Foundation of China (81970572) and Shanghai Children's Hospital (2021YGZM03).

Conflict of Interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

1. Zarocostas J. Serious birth defects kill at least three million children a year. BMJ. 2006; 332:256.
2. Chen Z, Wang Y, Lan F, Li S, Wang J. An expanded view of infertility: The challenge of the changing profiling of major birth defects in China. Biosci Trends. 2023; 17:318-321.
3. Chen Z, Li P, Lyu Y, Wang Y, Gao K, Wang J, Lan F, Chen F. Molecular genetics and general management of androgen insensitivity syndrome. Intractable Rare Dis Res. 2023; 12:71-77.
4. Gregor V, Sipek A, Sipek A, Jr., Horacek J, Langhammer P, Petrzilkova L, Calda P. Prenatal diagnostics of chromosomal aberrations Czech Republic: 1994-2007. Ceska Gynekol. 2009; 74:44-54. (in Czech)
5. Rogol AD. Sex chromosome aneuploidies and fertility: 47,XXY, 47,XYY, 47,XXX and 45,X/47,XXX. Endocr Connect. 2023; 12.
6. Benchikh S, Bousfiha A, Razoki L, Aboulfaraj J, Zarouf L, Elbakay C, Rifai LL, El Hamouchi A, Nassereddine S. Chromosome abnormalities related to reproductive and sexual development disorders: A 5-year retrospective dtudy. Biomed Res Int. 2021; 2021:8893467.
7. Ertosun MG, Araci DG, Peker A, Uzuner SY, Toylu A, Ozekinci M, Usta MF, Altiok Clark O. Investigation of the relationship between reproductive disorders and

chromosomal abnormalities in a large-scale, single-center 10-year retrospective study. J Gynecol Obstet Hum Reprod. 2022; 51:102467.
8. Ly P, Brunner SF, Shoshani O, Kim DH, Lan W, Pyntikova T, Flanagan AM, Behjati S, Page DC, Campbell PJ, Cleveland DW. Chromosome segregation errors generate a diverse spectrum of simple and complex genomic rearrangements. Nat Genet. 2019; 51:705-715.
9. Page MJ, McKenzie JE, Bossuyt PM, *et al*. The PRISMA 2020 statement: An updated guideline for reporting systematic reviews. BMJ. 2021; 372:n71.
10. Wolfgang V. Conducting meta-analyses in R with the metafor package. J Statistical Software. 2010;1–48.
11. Lee A KA. Early human embryos are naturally aneuploid-can that be corrected? J Assist Reprod Genet. 2017; 34:6.
12. Cui X, Cui Y, Shi L, Luan J, Zhou X, Han J. A basic understanding of Turner syndrome: Incidence, complications, diagnosis, and treatment. Intractable Rare Dis Res. 2018; 7:223-228.
13. Demirhan O, Tunc E. Cytogenetic status of patients with congenital malformations or suspected chromosomal abnormalities in Turkey: A comprehensive cytogenetic survey of 11,420 patients. Chromosoma. 2022; 131:225-237.
14. Mahdieh N, Rabbani B. An overview of mutation detection methods in genetic disorders. Iran J Pediatr. 2013; 23:375-388.
15. Jackson M, Marks L, May GHW, Wilson JB. The genetic basis of disease. Essays Biochem. 2018; 62:643-723.
16. He S, Xi H, Chen J, Wang D, Pang J, Hu J, Liu Q, Jia Z, Wang H. Prenatal genetic analysis and differential pregnancy outcomes of two de novo cases showing mosaic isodicentric Y chromosome. Mol Cytogenet. 2020; 13:7.
17. Madon PF, Athalye AS, Parikh FR. Polymorphic variants on chromosomes probably play a significant role in infertility. Reprod Biomed Online. 2005; 11:726-732.
18. Ralapanawe MSB, Gajaweera SL, Karunaratne N, Dissanayake VHW, Price MJ, Melo P, Coomarasamy A, Gallos ID. A comprehensive analysis of chromosomal polymorphic variants on reproductive outcomes after intracytoplasmic sperm injection treatment. Sci Rep. 2023; 13:1319.

Received October 29, 2023; Revised November 14, 2023; Accepted November 15, 2023.

**Address correspondence to:*
Zhongzhong Chen and Xiaoling Lin, Department of Urology, Shanghai Children's Hospital, School of Medicine, Shanghai Jiao Tong University, Shanghai 200062, China.
E-mail: zhongzhongchen@gmail.com; lxling.85@163.com

Released online in J-STAGE as advance publication November 17, 2023.

Original Article

DOI: 10.5582/irdr.2023.01119

Haploinsufficiency of *NKX2-1* is likely to contribute to developmental delay involving 14q13 microdeletions

Osamu Machida[1,2], Haruko Sakamoto[3,4], Keiko Shimojima Yamamoto[5,6], Yuiko Hasegawa[7], Satoi Nii[4], Hidenori Okada[3], Kazuki Nishikawa[3], Shin-Ichi Sumimoto[4], Eriko Nishi[7], Nobuhiko Okamoto[7], Toshiyuki Yamamoto[1,5,*]

[1] Division of Gene Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, Tokyo Women's Medical University, Tokyo, Japan;
[2] Department of Pediatrics, Tokyo Women's Medical University, Tokyo, Japan;
[3] Department of Pediatrics, Japanese Red Cross Osaka Hospital, Osaka, Japan;
[4] Otemae Rehabilitation Center for Children, Japanese Red Cross Osaka Hospital, Osaka, Japan;
[5] Department of Transfusion Medicine and Cell Processing, Tokyo Women's Medical University, Tokyo, Japan;
[6] Institute of Medical Genetics, Tokyo Women's Medical University, Tokyo, Japan;
[7] Department of Medical Genetics, Osaka Women's and Children's Hospital, Osaka, Japan.

SUMMARY Nucleotide variations or deletions in the NK2 homeobox 1 gene (*NKX2-1*), located at 14q13.3, lead to symptoms associated with the brain, lungs, and thyroid, and the combination of these phenotypes is clinically recognized as the brain-lung-thyroid syndrome. Many types of nucleotide variants of *NKX2-1* have been identified, and phenotypic variability has been reported. Chromosomal deletions involving *NKX2-1* have also been reported; however, phenotypic differences between patients with nucleotide variants of *NKX2-1* and patients with chromosomal deletions involving *NKX2-1* have not been well established. Recently, we identified seven patients with 14q13 microdeletions involving the *NKX2-1*. Most patients exhibited developmental delay. This inquiry arises regarding the potential existence of haploinsufficiency effects beyond those attributed to *NKX2-1* within the 14q13 microdeletion. However, a literature review has shown that developmental delay is not rare in patients with nucleotide alterations in *NKX2-1*. Rather, motor function impairment may have affected the total developmental assessment, and the haploinsufficiency of genes contiguous to *NKX2-1* is unlikely to contribute to developmental delay.

Keywords Brain-lung-thyroid syndrome, chromosomal microarray testing, movement disorder, language delay

1. Introduction

The NK2 homeobox 1 gene (*NKX2-1*; MIM* 600635), located on chromosome 14 long arm 13.3, encodes a protein initially identified as thyroid-specific transcription factor-1 (TTF-1) (*1*). This gene is highly expressed in the thyroid, lungs, and pituitary glands (*https://www.proteinatlas.org/*), and murine knockout studies have established its critical role during the embryogenesis of those organs (*2*). In 1998, Devriendt *et al.* first reported the case of an infant with neonatal thyroid dysfunction associated with an *NKX2-1* deletion (*3*). Subsequently, monoallelic pathogenic variants and heterozygous deletions of *NKX2-1* have been identified to be associated with a complex phenotype involving choreoathetosis, respiratory problems, and hypothyroidism (*4*), constituting the triad of brain-lung-thyroid syndrome (BLTS) (*5*). Patients with BLTS typically experience respiratory failure during the neonatal period (*6*). In early infancy, a diagnostic evaluation conducted due to recurrent upper respiratory infections and stunted growth typically reveals the presence of subclinical hypothyroidism. Then, mildly delayed acquisition of motor milestones with involuntary movements including ataxia and chorea are gradually observed. Hence, these motor disorders are acknowledged as the primary manifestation of brain involvement in BLTS (*7*).

Recently, we identified seven new patients with 14q13 microdeletions including *NKX2-1*. Generally, patients with chromosomal microdeletions exhibit clinical phenotypes involving multiple contiguous genes owing to the haploinsufficiency effect of the deletion. Therefore, it is important to elucidate whether haploinsufficiency affects genes other than *NKX2-1* that are present within the 14q13 microdeletion region.

Herein, we discuss the phenotypic differences between microdeletions including *NKX2-1* and intragenic variants within *NKX2-1*.

2. Patients and Methods

This study was performed in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki, and requisite permission was obtained from the ethics committee of Tokyo Women's Medical University. Peripheral blood samples were drawn from patients after obtaining written informed consent from their parents. Genomic DNA was extracted from the blood samples using a QIAamp DNA extraction kit (QIAGEN, Hilden, Germany) according to the manufacturer's instructions. Chromosomal microarray analysis (CMA) was performed using an Agilent Microarray 60 K kit (Agilent Technologies, Santa Clara, CA, USA) as previously described (*8*). Aberrations in the genomic copy number were visualized using the Agilent Genomic Workbench version 7 (Agilent Technologies). In this study, all genomic coordinates are referred to as GRCh37/hg19.

The clinical information of patients with 14q13 microdeletions was obtained from their attending physicians. Genotype-phenotype correlation was analyzed for patients with 14q13 microdeletions, in which previously reported patients were also included. The patients who showed microdeletions within chr14:33,000,000–41,000,000 were included in this analysis.

3. Results

3.1. Microdeletions

Five different microdeletions involving *NKX2-1* were detected in the seven patients (Figure 1). One of the microdeletions was detected in a sibling (an older sister and a male-female twin; patients 5–7). The genotypes and phenotypes of the patients are summarized in Table 1. In the literature, we identified sixteen previously reported patients, whose detailed information was available and who had microdeletions within chr14:33,000,000–41,000,000. These patients were included in Figure 1 and Table 1 for comparison with the patients in this study (*9-15*).

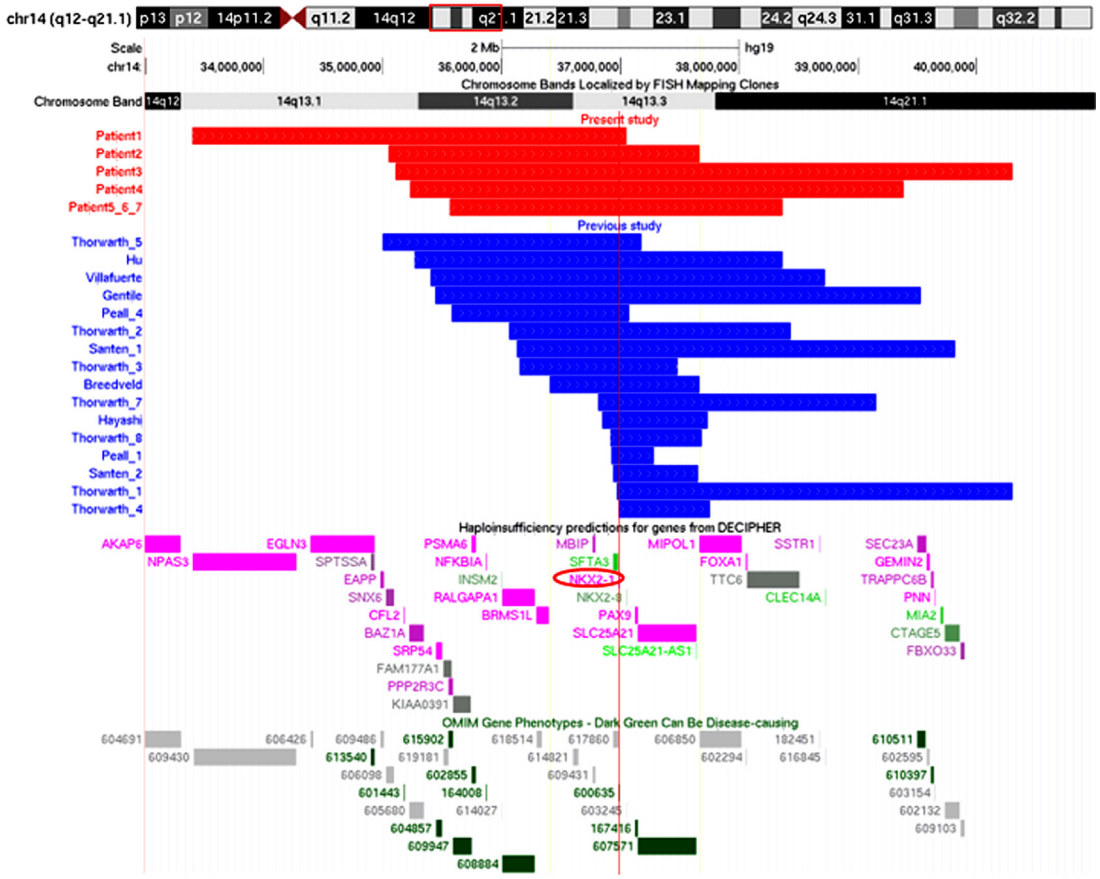


Figure 1. Genome map around 14q13 depicted by identified deletions. The map was captured from the UCSC genome browser (*https://genome.ucsc.edu/*). Regions of the identified deletions are depicted by custom tracks with red and blue bars (red for the deletions identified in this study, and blue for previously reported deletions). For haploinsufficiency prediction track, genes with magenta shades indicate a higher expectation of being haploinsufficient and genes with green shades indicate a lower expectation of being haploinsufficient. For OMIM gene phenotypes track, dark green and light gray indicate whether the genes are associated with OMIM phenotype or not, respectively. *NKX2-1* is highlighted by a red circle and the its location is shown by a red dotted line. All data are converted to GRCh37/hg19.

Table 1. Summary of the genotype and phenotype of the patients with 14q13 microdeletions

	This study							Santen *et al.* (2012)		Hu *et al.* (2013)	Peall *et al.* (2013)	
	Patient 1	Patient 2	Patient 3	Patient 4	Patient 5	Patient 6	Patient 7	Patient 1	Patient 2		Patient 1	Patient 4
Gender	Male	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Female	Male	Female	Female	Male
Age	9y5m	5y6m	3y1m	17y	8y	3y	3y	7y	5y	15y	11y	6y
Deletion region*												
Start	33,399,986	35,050,201	35,110,121	35,231,236	35,564,225	35,564,225	35,564,225	36,129,971	36,940,484	35,268,524	36,924,171	35,581,654
End	37,051,206	37,666,592	40,301,821	39,387,699	38,366,977	38,366,977	38,366,977	39,816,401	37,657,846	38,367,321	37,283,221	40,301,792
Deletion size (Mb)	3.7	2.6	5.2	4.2	2.8	2.8	2.8	3.7	0.7	3.1	0.4	4.7
Gestational age (W)	38	38	40	37	41	37	37	42	NA	NA	NA	NA
Birth weight (g)	3,008	2,928	3,182	3,278	3,748	2,550	2,631	3,600	NA	NA	NA	NA
Short stature	+	+	-	+	+	+	+	-	-	+	NA	NA
Neonatal respiratory distress	-	+	+	+	-	+	+	-	+	-	-	-
Hypothyroidism	-	+	+	-	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	+
Involuntary movements including ataxia	-	+	+	+	+	-	-	+	+	+	+	+
Developmental delay	Moderate	Border	Mild	Moderate	Moderate	Severe	Severe	Mild	-	+	+	+
Other finding	Undescended testis	Pulmonary artery bifurcation stenosis and distinctive facial findings			Anodontia							

	Thorwarth *et al.* (2014)							Hayashi *et al.* (2015)		Gentile *et al.* (2016)	Villafuerte *et al.* (2018)	Positive ratio
	Patient 1	Patient 2	Patient 3	Patient 4	Patient 5	Patient 7	Patient 8	II-1	II-2			
Gender	Male	Male	Female	Male	Female	Male	Female	Famale	Famale	Female	Female	
Age	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	14y	7y	15m	10y	
Deletion region*												
Start	36,972,991	36,068,376	36,151,329	36,988,681	35,001,682	36,814,106	36,919,999	36,852,260	36,852,260	35,443,407	35,404,289	
End	37,072,789	38,433,164	37,483,407	37,755,695	37,176,663	39,156,509	37,684,890	37,735,951	37,735,951	39,527,387	38,723,530	
Deletion size (Mb)	1.0	2.4	1.3	0.8	2.2	2.3	0.8	0.9	0.9	4.1	3.3	
Gestational age (W)	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	40	39	NA	
Birth weight (g)	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	2620	NA	
Short stature	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	-	-	
Neonatal respiratory distress	+	-	-	-	-	+	+	+	+	-	+	52%
Hypothyroidism	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	87%
Involuntary movements including ataxia	+	+	-	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	+	78%
Developmental delay	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	+	+	-	+	
Other finding										Craniofacial findings	Craniofacial findings	

*, genomic positions referred to GRCh37/hg19 (All data are unified to the same build). y, years; m, months; Mb, megabase; W, weeks. Clinical information of the case reported by Breedveld *et al.* (7) is unavailable and not included in this table.

3.2. Patient reports

Clinical features of the patients are summarized in Table 1.

Patient 1, a 9-year-5-month-old boy, was born at 38 weeks of gestation without asphyxia. His birth weight was 3008 g. The right undescended testis was observed. He showed generalized hypotonia and psychomotor developmental delay since infancy, walking alone at three years of age. At present, his height is 118.6 cm (-2.5 SD), weight is 21 kg (-2.3 SD), and occipitofrontal circumference (OFC) is 51.5 cm (-0.7 SD), indicating short stature. He has developed established patterns for toilet habits and wearing clothing. Although he could walk by himself, he fell easily because of his ataxic gait. Thus, he required a handrail when going up and down the stairs. His intellectual quotient (IQ) was 33, indicating a moderate intellectual disability.

Patient 2 is a 5-year-6-month-old boy, who was born at 38 weeks of gestation without asphyxia. His birth weight was 2,928 g. Due to transient neonatal hypercapnia, he required transient ventilatory management. Pulmonary artery bifurcation stenosis was also observed. He showed distinctive facial features, including frontal bossing, epicanthus, long philtrum, large ear cups, and a congenital ear fistula. Although the patient showed elevated levels of thyroid-stimulating hormone, no medication was prescribed. His development was mildly delayed, with laughter noted at three months, head control at five months, turning over at six months, crawling and sitting at 12 months, and standing with support at 18 months. He uttered a two-word sentence after two years. At present, his height is 98.8 cm (-2.4 SD), weight is 21 kg (-2.3 SD), and OFC is 51.5 cm (-0.7 SD), indicating short stature. He has established his activities in daily life. His running and jumping movements were ataxic; however, dysarthria has been noted. The patient's IQ was 75.

Patient 3, a 3-year-1-month-old girl, was born at 40 weeks of gestation without asphyxia. The patient's birth weight was 3,182 g. After birth, she showed temporary respiratory distress but no feeding problems. Due to hypothyroidism, levothyroxine treatment was initiated on day eight. There was a history of viral infection at 2 months. She showed a mild motor developmental delay, with head control at 3 months, turning over at 7 months, sitting at 12 months, crawling and standing with support at 13 months, and walking alone at 15 months of age. However, her language development was not delayed with three-word sentences spoken at three years. Her developmental quotient was 60, indicating a mild delay. She shows gait instability and athetosis, although she can climb stairs using a handrail. At present, her height is 89.4 cm (-0.7 SD), weight is 13.5 kg (+0.2 SD), and OFC is 47.8 cm (-0.4 SD).

Patient 4 is a 17-year-old boy, who was born at 37 weeks of gestation without asphyxia. His birth weight was 3,278 g. The patient experienced transient neonatal hyperpnea associated with pulmonary hypertension. The patient had a history of recurrent pneumonia accompanied by bronchomalacia and gastroesophageal reflux. His motor development was severely delayed, with head control at 2 years, sitting at 6 years, and standing with support at 10 years. However, his total IQ score was 46, indicating a moderate intellectual disability. At present, his height is 146.2 cm (-4.2 SD), weight is 36.6 kg (-2.5 SD), and OFC is 52.5 cm, (+0.3 SD), indicating short stature. His daily life skills have not yet been fully established. The patient still shows an ataxic gait and falls easily.

Patients 5, 6, and 7 are siblings. Interview revealed that their mother had shown developmental delay during childhood. The mother exhibits a short stature. Due to hypothyroidism, she has continued to take levothyroxine. The father of patient 5 and the father of patients 6 and 7 are different. Patient 5 is a 9-year-old girl born as a result of her mother's second pregnancy. The patient was born at 41 weeks of gestation with a birth weight of 3,748 g. She showed developmental delay with head control at 10 months, walking with support at 16 months, and use of simple words at 12 months. The patient experienced recurrent pneumonia during early childhood. Levothyroxine was prescribed for hypothyroidism. She also had short stature. Involuntary movement and dysarthria were also observed. When necessary, patients used a wheelchair. She also had anodontia in some teeth.

Patients 6 and 7 are 3-year-old male and female twins, respectively. They were born at 37 weeks of gestation with birth weights of 2,550 g and 2,631 g, respectively. Both patients needed respiratory management at the NICU due to neonatal respiratory failure. Nitric oxide inhalation was administered to patient 6 (first twin) for persistent pulmonary hypertension. Surfactant administration was required for patient 7 (second twin) because of associated pulmonary hemorrhage. After extubation, both patients experienced difficulty in weaning from oxygen and continued home oxygen therapy. Both patients showed developmental delay, turning over at 18 months of age without sitting. They also exhibited hypotonia and short stature. Due to hypothyroidism, levothyroxine was prescribed to both patients.

4. Discussion

The classical triad of BLTS is not always present, and only 50% of patients with *NKX2-1* involvement develop the complete triad (*16*). The severity of the phenotypes also varies, even within the same family (*17*). As shown in Table 1, not all patients identified in this study fulfilled the triad.

Movement disorders, including choreoathetosis, are thought to be the main neurological symptoms

associated with *NKX2-1*–related abnormalities. However, most patients in this study showed mild-to-severe developmental delay (Table 1). Thus, we hypothesized that developmental delay may be a symptom specific to microdeletions and may be attributed to haploinsufficiency affecting another gene within the deletion.

Santen *et al*. reported seven patients with 14q deletions (*9*). Two of them showed microdeletions including *NKX2-1*, and one of the two patients showed mild developmental delay (Table 1). Hamvas *et al*. reported five patients with *NKX2-1* deletions and 16 patients with *NKX2-1* variants (*18*). All patients with *NKX2-1* deletions exhibited developmental delay in association with language delay or behavior problems. On the other hand, only three of 16 patients with *NKX2-1* variants showed language delay. The "Patient 2", reported by Shetty *et al*. (*19*), demonstrated 14q13-q21.1 microdeletion; however, details are unavailable. The patient was diagnosed as having autism; whereas, such clinical features are considered as a nonmotor neurological manifestations of *NKX2-1* abnormalities. Thorwarth *et al.* (*12*) reported 32 patients with *NKX2-1* involvement. Eleven patients had microdeletions including *NKX2-1*. Twelve patients showed low-normal levels of IQ (*12*); however, whether they had microdeletions or nucleotide variants in the gene remains unknown. Peall *et al.* (*11*) reported ten patients with *NKX2-1*–related abnormalities. Two of ten patients exhibited microdeletions involving *NKX2-1*, and exhibited developmental delay. In contrast, developmental delay was also observed in four of the eight patients with *NKX2-1* intragenic nucleotide variants (50%). Parnes *et al*. reported five patients with *NKX2-1* variants. Four of five patients show speech delay together with motor delay (*20*). From these findings, we concluded that the comorbidity rate of developmental delay does not change significantly depending on whether patients had microdeletions involving *NKX2-1* or nucleotide variants of *NKX2-1*.

As shown in Figure 1, in the neighboring region of *NKX2-1*, there are some genes with a higher expectation of being haploinsufficient. Although some of them are related to OMIM phenotypes, most of them are related to unknown inheritance pattern. Previously, haploinsufficiency of the Ral GTPase activating protein alpha subunit 1 gene (*RALGAPA1*) was considered to be related to developmental delay and epilepsy (*21*), and *RALGAPA1* was included in the commonly deleted region in this study (Figure 1). However, *RALGAPA1* was later identified as a gene related to developmental epileptic encephalopathy associated with an autosomal recessive trait (*22*), and carriers of loss-of-function variants of *RALGAPA1* showed no symptoms. Hence, haploinsufficiency of *RALGAPA1* was not related to clinical symptoms, such as the developmental delay observed in patients with 14q13 microdeletions. Because *RALGAPA1* is the only gene highly expressed in the brain in the contiguous region of *NKX2-1*, the haploinsufficiency of other genes contiguous to *NKX2-1* is unlikely to contribute to developmental delay.

In conclusion, alteration of *NKX2-1* itself would contribute to developmental delay in patients.

Acknowledgements

We thank the patients and their families for cooperation to this study.

Funding: This work was supported by Grants-in-Aid for Scientific Research from Health Labor Sciences Research Grants from the Ministry of Health, Labor, and Welfare, Japan (22FC1005), and Grants-in-Aid for Scientific Research (KAKENHI) from the Japan Society for the Promotion of Science (JSPS) (Grant Number 21K07873).

Conflict of Interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

1. Guazzi S, Price M, De Felice M, Damante G, Mattei MG, Di Lauro R. Thyroid nuclear factor 1 (TTF-1) contains a homeodomain and displays a novel DNA binding specificity. EMBO J. 1990; 9:3631-3639.
2. Kimura S, Hara Y, Pineau T, Fernandez-Salguero P, Fox CH, Ward JM, Gonzalez FJ. The T/ebp null mouse: Thyroid-specific enhancer-binding protein is essential for the organogenesis of the thyroid, lung, ventral forebrain, and pituitary. Genes Dev. 1996; 10:60-69.
3. Devriendt K, Vanhole C, Matthijs G, de Zegher F. Deletion of thyroid transcription factor-1 gene in an infant with neonatal thyroid dysfunction and respiratory failure. N Engl J Med. 1998; 338:1317-1318.
4. Krude H, Schütz B, Biebermann H, *et al.* Choreoathetosis, hypothyroidism, and pulmonary alterations due to human NKX2-1 haploinsufficiency. J Clin Invest. 2002; 109:475-480.
5. Willemsen MA, Breedveld GJ, Wouda S, Otten BJ, Yntema JL, Lammens M, de Vries BB. Brain-Thyroid-Lung syndrome: A patient with a severe multi-system disorder due to a de novo mutation in the thyroid transcription factor 1 gene. Eur J Pediatr. 2005; 164:28-30.
6. Cavaliere E, Gortan AJ, Passon N, Fabbro D, Marin D, Carecchio M, Baldan F, Credendino SC, Gallo R, Cogo P, Damante G, De Vita G. NKX2.1 run-on mutation associated to familial brain-lung-thyroid syndrome. Clin Genet. 2021; 100:114-116.
7. Breedveld GJ, van Dongen JW, Danesino C, *et al.* Mutations in TITF-1 are associated with benign hereditary chorea. Hum Mol Genet. 2002; 11:971-979.
8. Yamamoto T, Wilsdon A, Joss S, Isidor B, Erlandsson A, Suri M, Sangu N, Shimada S, Shimojima K, Le Caignec C, Samuelsson L, Stefanova M. An emerging phenotype of Xq22 microdeletions in females with severe intellectual disability, hypotonia and behavioral abnormalities. J Hum

Genet. 2014; 59:300-306.
9. Santen GW, Sun Y, Gijsbers AC, Carré A, Holvoet M, Haeringen A, Lesnik Oberstein SA, Tomoda A, Mabe H, Polak M, Devriendt K, Ruivenkamp CA, Bijlsma EK. Further delineation of the phenotype of chromosome 14q13 deletions: (positional) involvement of FOXG1 appears the main determinant of phenotype severity, with no evidence for a holoprosencephaly locus. J Med Genet. 2012; 49:366-372.
10. Hu X, Liu J, Guo R, Guo J, Zhao Z, Li W, Xu B, Hao C. A novel 14q13.1-21.1 deletion identified by CNV-Seq in a patient with brain-lung-thyroid syndrome, tooth agenesis and immunodeficiency. Mol Cytogenet. 2019; 12:51.
11. Peall KJ, Lumsden D, Kneen R, *et al.* Benign hereditary chorea related to NKX2.1: expansion of the genotypic and phenotypic spectrum. Dev Med Child Neurol. 2014; 56:642-648.
12. Thorwarth A, Schnittert-Hübener S, Schrumpf P, *et al.* Comprehensive genotyping and clinical characterisation reveal 27 novel NKX2-1 mutations and expand the phenotypic spectrum. J Med Genet. 2014; 51:375-387.
13. Hayashi S, Yagi M, Morisaki I, Inazawa J. Identical deletion at 14q13.3 including PAX9 and NKX2-1 in siblings from mosaicism of unaffected parent. J Hum Genet. 2015; 60:203-206.
14. Gentile M, De Mattia D, Pansini A, Schettini F, Buonadonna AL, Capozza M, Ficarella R, Laforgia N. 14q13 distal microdeletion encompassing NKX2-1 and PAX9: Patient report and refinement of the associated phenotype. Am J Med Genet A. 2016; 170:1884-1888.
15. Villafuerte B, Natera-de-Benito D, González A, Mori MA, Palomares M, Nevado J, García-Miñaur S, Lapunzina P, González-Granado LI, Allende LM, Moreno JC. The Brain-Lung-Thyroid syndrome (BLTS): A novel deletion in chromosome 14q13.2-q21.1 expands the phenotype to humoral immunodeficiency. Eur J Med Genet. 2018; 61:393-398.
16. Carré A, Szinnai G, Castanet M, *et al.* Five new TTF1/NKX2.1 mutations in brain-lung-thyroid syndrome: rescue by PAX8 synergism in one case. Hum Mol Genet. 2009; 18:2266-2276.
17. Gras D, Jonard L, Roze E, *et al.* Benign hereditary chorea: Phenotype, prognosis, therapeutic outcome and long term follow-up in a large series with new mutations in the TITF1/NKX2-1 gene. J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry. 2012; 83:956-962.
18. Hamvas A, Deterding RR, Wert SE, *et al.* Heterogeneous pulmonary phenotypes associated with mutations in the thyroid transcription factor gene NKX2-1. Chest. 2013; 144:794-804.
19. Shetty VB, Kiraly-Borri C, Lamont P, Bikker H, Choong CS. NKX2-1 mutations in brain-lung-thyroid syndrome: A case series of four patients. J Pediatr Endocrinol Metab. 2014; 27:373-378.
20. Parnes M, Bashir H, Jankovic J. Is benign hereditary chorea really benign? Brain-lung-thyroid syndrome caused by NKX2-1 mutations. Mov Disord Clin Pract. 2019; 6:34-39.
21. Shimojima K, Komoike Y, Tohyama J, Takahashi S, Páez MT, Nakagawa E, Goto Y, Ohno K, Ohtsu M, Oguni H, Osawa M, Higashinakagawa T, Yamamoto T. TULIP1 (RALGAPA1) haploinsufficiency with brain development delay. Genomics. 2009; 94:414-422.
22. Wagner M, Skorobogatko Y, Pode-Shakked B, *et al.* Bi-allelic variants in RALGAPA1 cause profound neurodevelopmental disability, muscular hypotonia, infantile spasms, and feeding abnormalities. Am J Hum Genet. 2020; 106:246-255.

Received December 29, 2023; Revised January 12, 2024; Accepted January 31, 2024.

**Address correspondence to:*
Toshiyuki Yamamoto, Division of Gene Medicine, Graduate School of Medicine, Tokyo Women's Medical University, 8-1 Kawada-cho, Shinjuku-ward, Tokyo 162-8666, Japan.
E-mail: yamamoto.toshiyuki@twmu.ac.jp

Released online in J-STAGE as advance publication February 3, 2024.

Original Article

DOI: 10.5582/irdr.2023.01108

Role of IFITM2 in osteogenic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 mesenchymal stem cells

Yongtao Zhang[1], Xiangdong Li[2], Shanshan Zhang[1], Junfeng Li[1], Meilin Liu[1], Yanqin Lu[1,3,*], Jinxiang Han[1,3,*]

[1] Key Laboratory for Biotech Drugs of the National Health Commission, Key Laboratory for Rare & Uncommon Diseases of Shandong Province, Biomedical Sciences College & Shandong Medicinal Biotechnology Centre, Shandong First Medical University & Shandong Academy of Medical Sciences, Ji'nan, Shandong, China;
[2] Department of Clinical Laboratory, The First Affiliated Hospital of Shandong First Medical University & Shandong Provincial Qianfoshan Hospital, Ji'nan, Shandong, China;
[3] Department of Endocrinology and Metabology, The First Affiliated Hospital of Shandong First Medical University & Shandong Provincial Qianfoshan Hospital, Ji'nan, Shandong, China.

SUMMARY Interferon-inducible transmembrane (IFITM) are a family of small proteins localized to plasma and endolysosomal membranes. Their functions beyond restricting viral entry and replication have been revealed in recent years. IFITM5 is involved in bone mineralization and is an osteogenic cell surface marker. IFITM1 and 3 interact with desmin and myosin, and are involved in myogenic differentiation. This study found upregulation of *Ifitm2* during osteogenic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 cells. This positively correlated to the expression of osteogenic differentiation markers *Col1a1, Alp, Runx2*, and *Ocn*. Knockdown of *Ifitm2* by siRNAs inhibited osteogenic differentiation, calcium deposition, and osteogenic marker expression of C3H10T1/2 cells. The osteoblast transcriptome revealed that knocking down *Ifitm2* affected the expression Wnt signaling pathway-related genes, including Wnt family members, their receptors Lrp, Frizzled, and Lgr, and transmembrane molecule Rnf43 that suppresses the Wnt signaling pathway. Luciferase assays indicated enhancement of canonical Wnt signaling pathways by *Ifitm2* overexpression. Furthermore, IFITM2 was colocalized in the metaphyseal bone and growth plate of the mouse tibial bone with SP7, a transcription factor essential for osteoblast differentiation and bone formation. These findings reveal a possible novel function and potential mechanisms of *Ifitm2* in osteogenic differentiation.

Keywords IFITM2, osteogenic differentiation, Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway, TOP/FOP assay, C3H10T1/2 cells

1. Introduction

Mesenchymal stem cells can differentiate into mature osteoblasts lining the bone surface and osteocytes embedded in bone (*1*). Osteogenesis is a three-step process consisting of the proliferative phase, matrix maturation, and mineralization (*2*). The process is characterized by distinctive sequentially expressed osteoblast markers, including alkaline phosphatase (ALP), type I collagen (Col1), osteopontin (OPN), bone sialoprotein (BSP), and osteocalcin (OCN) (*3-7*). The effects of interferon (IFN) on differentiation of osteoblastic cells have recently drawn attention (*8,9*). Even without exogenous IFN and virus infection, in a cell model of osteogenic differentiation, the cells spontaneously produce endogenous IFN that increases expression of interferon-stimulated genes, including interferon-inducible transmembrane (IFITM) proteins (*10*).

IFITM proteins belong to the small interferon-stimulated family with molecular masses ranging from 10 to 20 kDa (*11*). The family members include IFITM1, IFITM2, IFITM3, IFITM5, and IFITM10 in humans, and IFITM1, IFITM2, IFITM3, IFITM5, IFITM6, IFITM7 and IFITM10 in mice (*12,13*). Except for IFITM3, IFITMs are highly expressed in rat bone marrow (*14*). IFITM1–3 play a vital role in blocking viral infection (*15,16*). IFITMs are increasingly thought to have a role in cancer and innate immunity (*17*). We previously found upregulation of IFITM1–3 during myogenic differentiation, and IFITM1 and 3 interact with desmin and myosin (*18*). Hence, the functions of IFITMs

extend to multiple lineages of differentiation. The study investigated *Ifitm2* expression during osteogenic differentiation and the related signaling pathways.

2. Materials and Methods

2.1. Cell culture and osteogenic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 cells

C3H10T1/2 cells were cultured in high-glucose Dulbecco's modified Eagle's medium supplemented with 10% (v/v) fetal bovine serum, 2 mM glutamine, 100 U/mL penicillin, and 100 μg/mL streptomycin at 37°C with 5% CO_2. Osteogenic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 cells was performed in 6- or 24-well plates. At 24 h post-seeding, cells were cultured in osteogenic differentiation medium containing 10 mM β-glycerophosphate, 100 nM dexamethasone, and 0.2 mM ascorbic acid. C3H10T1/2 cells were osteogenically stimulated for 14 days with medium exchanges every 3 days. The osteogenic differentiation capacity was determined by alizarin red S staining.

2.2. Alizarin red S staining

C3H10T1/2 cells were washed with PBS and fixed with 4% paraformaldehyde at room temperature for 15 min. After rinsing with PBS twice, the cells were stained with a 0.2% alizarin red S solution at room temperature for 20 min and then washed with deionized water until the supernatant was colorless. Stained C3H10T1/2 cells were imaged using a digital camera (Canon, Japan). After imaging, 10% cetylpyridinium chloride (Sangon Biotech, China) was applied in the dark for 30 min, and then 100 μL was transferred to a 96-well plate to measure the OD value at 560 nm. Analyses were performed in at least three independent experiments. Absorbance at day 0 was used to normalize the alizarin red S staining results.

2.3. RNA extraction and RT-qPCR

Total RNA was isolated from C3H10T1/2 cells cultured in differentiation or normal media using a FastGene RNA Basic Kit (Takara, Japan) in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. RNA purity and integrity were evaluated using a NanoDrop 2000 spectrophotometer. After digestion with DNase I (Takara, Japan), 1 μg total RNA was reverse transcribed to cDNA using a ReverTra Ace qPCR RT Kit (Takara, Japan). Quantitative PCR was performed using 2× SYBR Green qPCR Mix (SparkJade, Bio, China) and a LightCycler 480. PCR conditions were as follows: initial 5 min denaturation at 95 ℃, followed by 45 cycles of amplification at 95 ℃ for 10 sec, 60 ℃ for 10 sec and 72 ℃ for 15 sec. To quantify the expression of each gene of interest, mRNA expression levels were normalized to the mRNA level of glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate dehydrogenase (GAPDH). Relative gene expression was calculated with the $2^{-\Delta\Delta Ct}$ method. Each sample was analyzed in triplicate. Primer sequences were as follows: *Gapdh*: 5′-CATCCCAGAGCTGAACG-3′ (forward), 5′-CTGGTCCTCAGTGTAGCC-3′ (reverse); *Col1a1*: 5′-GCTCCTCTTAGGGGCCACT-3′ (forward), 5′-ATTGGGGACCCTTAGGCCAT-3′ (reverse); *Alp*: 5′- GCCCGGCCGAGTACA-3′ (forward), 5′-CTGGCCAGAAACTTCACCTT-3′ (reverse); *Runx2*: 5′-ACAGAGCTATTAAAGTGACAGTGGAC-3′ (forward), 5′- GGCGATCAGAGAACAAACTAGG 3′ (reverse); *Ocn*: 5′-GCGCTCTGTCTCTCTGACCT-3′ (forward), 5′-TTCAGGAGGGTAGTTACCCAAA-3′ (reverse).

2.4. Western blotting

C3H10T1/2 cells in a 6-well plate were washed with cold PBS. Then, the cells were lysed in 200 μL RIPA lysis buffer with 1% PMSF (Cwbio, China) at 4°C. The extracted proteins were quantified using a BCA protein concentration assay kit (Biosharp, China). Protein samples (20 μg/lane) were resolved by 12% SDS-PAGE. Proteins were then transferred to a polyvinylidene fluoride membrane (0.45 μm, Biosharp). The membrane was blocked with 5% dry skim milk in Tris-buffered saline containing 0.1% Tween 20 (TBST) for 2 h at room temperature.

The membrane was incubated with a primary antibody against COL1A1 (1:2000, 67288-1-Ig, Proteintech, USA), ALP (1:2500, PA5-63148, Thermo Fisher, USA), RUNX2 (1:1000, 82636-2-RR, Proteintech), OCN (1:500, 3418-1-AP, Proteintech), IFITM2 (1:1000, bs-15517R, Bioss, China), or GAPDH (1:3000, ab8245, Abcam, USA) overnight at 4°C. After washing with 0.1% Tween in PBS, the membrane was incubated with an anti-rabbit-horseradish peroxidase-conjugated secondary antibody (1:2000, SA00001, Proteintech) for 1 h at 37°C. A Super-sensitive ECL chemiluminescent substrate kit (Biosharp, China) was used to develop protein bands. ImageJ-win64 (Rawak Software Inc., Stuttgart, Germany) was used for densitometry.

2.5. siRNA transfection

Small interfering RNA based on our previous study (*18*) and directed against mouse *Ifitm2* was synthesized by GenePharma (Shanghai, China). Before siRNA transfection, C3H10T1/2 cells were seeded at 2×10^5 cells/well in 6-well plates in serum and antibiotic-free DMEM. Transfections were performed with siRNA-*Ifitm2* or negative control siRNA (si-NC) using ExFect transfection regent (Vazyme, China) in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. After 6 h of transfection, the medium was replaced with osteogenic differentiation medium. After 5 days, proteins were extracted for

western blotting, and total RNA was extracted for RNA-sequencing analysis.

2.6. RNA-seq and bioinformatics analysis

Total RNA was extracted using an RNeasy Mini Kit (QIAGEN, China), following the manufacturer's instructions. Two micrograms of RNA were used as the input material for the RNA sample preparation. Sequencing libraries were generated using a NEBNext Ultra RNA Library Prep Kit for Illumina (#E7530L, NEB, USA), following the manufacturer's recommendations. Index codes were added to attribute sequences to each sample. The libraries were sequenced using a NovaSeq 6000 (pair-end 150 bp). All reads were mapped to the mouse reference genome using HISAT2 (v.2.2.1) as reported previously (*19*). RNA counts were generated by *featureCounts* (v.2.0.0) (*20*). Differential expression analysis was implemented using the edgeR package (v.3.34.1) as reported previously (*21*). Genes with an expression fold change of ≥ 1.5 or ≤ 1.5 and adjusted P-value of < 0.05 were identified as significantly differentially expressed genes. For further analysis, a volcano plot was generated by the ggplot2 R package. Heat maps were generated by the pheatmap R package.

Cluster and pathway analyses were performed using the KEGG pathway database (*http://www.kegg.jp/kegg/*) and DAVID bioinformatics resources 6.8 (*https://david.ncifcrf.gov/*). Enriched pathways were ranked using the combined score calculated by the software. To perform gene ontology (GO) analysis, data of the function annotation diagram were obtained using the DAVID website, and data with $P < 0.05$ were selected. Data processing and mapping were performed using R-project (v4.0.5) and Rstudio software (v1.3.1093).

2.7. TOP/FOP flash luciferase reporter assay

HEK293T cells were seeded into a 96-well plate at 1×10^4 cells per well. Then, 250 ng TOP/FOP, 50 ng pTK-RL plasmid, and 100 ng pMCV6-Ifitm2 overexpression vector or control were transiently cotransfected into the cells using ExFect Transfection Reagent (Vazyme). The activities of firefly and Renilla luciferase reporters were measured in triplicate at 48 h post-transfection using the Duo-Lite Luciferase Assay System (Vazyme) in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Firefly luciferase activity was normalized to the Renilla luciferase activity. The TOP/FOP ratio was used to indicate β-catenin-driven transcription.

2.8. Immunofluorescence staining

C3H10T1/2 cells were fixed with 4% paraformaldehyde in phosphate-buffered saline, permeabilized with 0.25% Triton X-100, and blocked in a blocking solution (2% glycine, 2% bovine serum albumin, 5% fetal bovine serum, and 50 mM NH_4Cl in phosphate-buffered saline) for 1 h. Then, the cells were incubated with primary antibodies for 12 h at 4℃ and then with corresponding secondary antibodies conjugated to various fluorescent dyes. For nuclear staining, the cells were incubated with 1 μg/mL DAPI (Sigma, USA) for 10 min at room temperature. After washing with PBS, the cells were subjected to microscopy.

2.9. Double immunofluorescence staining of paraffin-embedded sections

The animal study was approved by ethics committee of Shandong First Medical University & Shandong Academy of Medical Sciences, and was performed in accordance with ethical standards stated in the 1964 Declaration of Helsinki and its later amendments. The tibia was harvested from 15-week-old male mice. Specimens were immersed in paraffin and then sectioned. Double immunofluorescence staining was performed on 5-μm-thick paraffin-embedded sections of formalin-fixed mouse tibial samples. Samples were deparaffinized and rehydrated. After blocking with normal goat serum for 30 min at room temperature, a rabbit anti-IFITM2 antibody (1:500, bs-15517R, Bioss) was applied at 4°C overnight, followed by an Alexa 488-conjugated goat anti-rabbit IgG secondary antibody (1:500, A-11001, Thermo Fisher) for 1 h at room temperature. Additional immunofluorescence staining was then performed by incubation with an anti-SP7 primary antibody (1:500, Ag29889, Proteintech), for 1 h at room temperature, followed by incubation with an Alexa Fluor 594-conjugated fluorescent goat anti-mouse IgG secondary antibody (1:100, A-11005, Thermo Fisher) for 1 h at room temperature. After washing with PBS, 10 μg/mL DAPI was applied in the dark for 10 min. Samples were sealed with an anti-fluorescence attenuation sealing sheet. Images were obtained under a fluorescence microscope.

2.10. Statistical analysis

Results are presented as the mean ± standard error of the mean. To identify significant differences, statistical comparisons were made by one-way ANOVA and the Tukey multiple comparisons test using GraphPad Prism software (v.8.0) (GraphPad Software Inc, USA). $P < 0.05$ was considered statistically significant. All experiments were repeated at least three times.

3. Results

3.1. *Ifitm2* is upregulated during osteogenic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 cells

Calcium deposition of C3H10T1/2 cells during osteogenic differentiation was detected by alizarin red S staining. After 5, 7, 10, and 14 days, the area of red

staining in the surrounding material was increased gradually, indicating enhanced precipitation of calcium salts as induction time increased (Figure 1A). Quantitative analysis of osteogenic mineral deposition indicated a significant difference between the osteogenic differentiation group at day 5 and later days compared with day 0, which was uninduced (Figure 1B). Analysis of osteogenic differentiation markers was performed at 0–14 days of incubation in osteogenic differentiation medium. mRNA and protein expression levels of *Col1a1*, *Alp*, *Runx2*, and *Ocn* at days 10 and 14 after osteogenic differentiation induction was consistent and significantly increased ($P < 0.01$) (Figure 1C, D).

RT-qPCR analysis indicated that C3H10T1/2 cells in osteogenic induction medium at day 7 showed the highest expression of *Ifitm2*, but no significant increase was found at days 3 and 5 (Figure 2A). Overall trends showed an increase in IFITM2 protein expression during osteogenic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 cells with higher expression on days 3 and 5 compared with day 0 before induction and slightly decreased expression at day 7 ($P < 0.01$) (Figure 2B). Immunofluorescence also showed an increase in IFITM2 expression after 5 days of osteogenic induction compared with day 0 ($P < 0.01$) (Figure 2C).

3.2. siRNA downregulates *Ifitm2* expression during osteogenic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 cells

We hypothesized that *Ifitm2* plays a role in calcium homeostasis during osteogenic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 cells. Therefore, we silenced *Ifitm2* gene expression to examine its effect on mineralization of C3H10T1/2 cells during osteogenic differentiation (Supplement Figure S1, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=176*). Alizarin red S staining showed reduced calcium deposition of osteogenically induced cells transfected with specific *Ifitm2* siRNAs ($P < 0.01$) (Figure 3A). Quantitative analysis showed that C3H10T1/2 cells with *Ifitm2* knockdown exhibited low calcium deposition at day 5 after osteogenic induction, whereas calcification was observed in si-NC and mock groups (Figure 3B). Regarding osteogenic marker genes, the expression levels of COL1A1, ALP, RUNX2, and OCN were significantly low in *Ifitm2* knockdown groups, which further indicated the involvement of *Ifitm2* in osteoblastic differentiation ($P < 0.01$) (Figure 3C, D).

3.3. RNA-seq and bioinformatics analysis

We used RNA-seq and bioinformatics analysis to assess gene expression changes triggered by *si-Ifitm2* transfection. A volcano plot of RNA-seq data revealed that 2,064 genes were upregulated (red) and 1,848 were downregulated (blue) after *Ifitm2* knockdown [fold change ≥ 1.5, false discovery rate (FDR) < 0.01] (Figure 4A). Heat map analysis revealed distinct genes after *Ifitm2* knockdown (Figure 4B, C; details on the genes are displayed in Supplementary Table S1, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/*

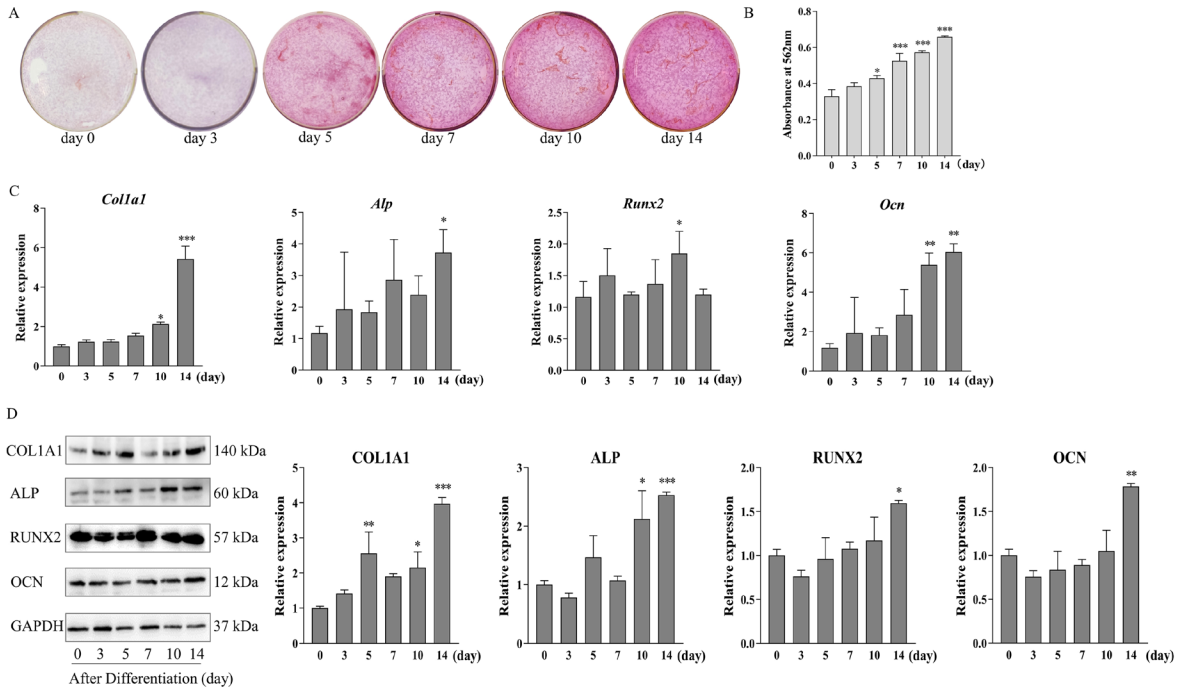


Figure 1. Alizarin red S staining and osteogenic biomarker expression of C3H10T1/2 cells at various days of osteogenic induction. (A) Representative alizarin red S staining of cells in 24-well plates. **(B)** Quantification of alizarin red S staining showed an increase in calcium deposition after osteogenic induction (**$P < 0.01$ *vs.* day 0 group). **(C)** Expression levels of *Col1a1*, *Alp*, *Runx2*, and *Ocn* measured by RT-qPCR. **(D)** Representative bands of COL1A1, ALP, RUNX2, OCN, and GAPDH in western blots. Semi-quantification of the band intensity in western blots is shown. Protein levels were normalized to GAPDH. *$P < 0.05$, **$P < 0.01$, and ***$P < 0.001$ *vs.* day 0 group.

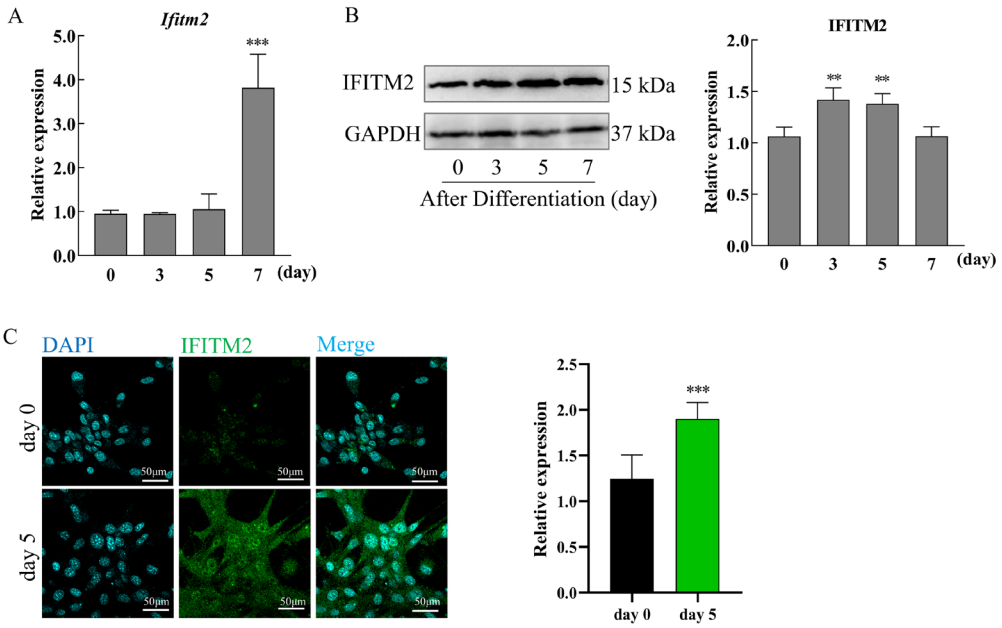


Figure 2. Increased expression of IFITM2 during osteoblastic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 cells. (A) Relative expression of *Ifitm2* mRNA measured by RT-qPCR after osteogenic induction for 3, 5, and 7 days. **(B)** Representative bands of IFITM2 in western blots and densitometry after osteogenic induction for 3, 5, and 7 days. Protein levels were normalized to GAPDH. **(C)** Immunofluorescence staining of IFITM2 (green) in C3H10T1/2 cells without or with osteogenic induction (day 5). Scale bars, 50 μm. Nuclei were visualized by DAPI staining. Quantitative analysis of the relative fluorescence intensity by one-way ANOVA is shown ($n = 3$). $^{**}P < 0.01$, and $^{***}P < 0.001$.

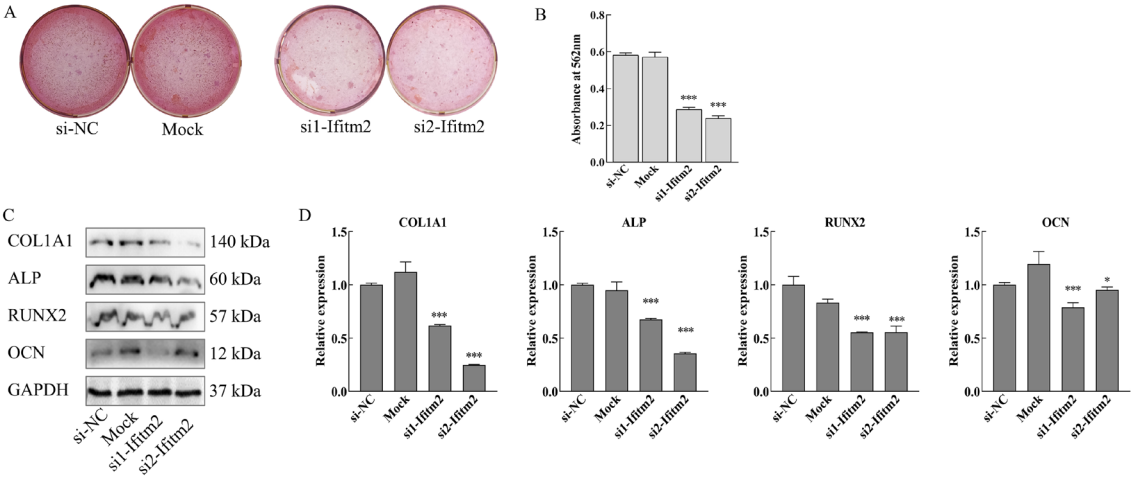


Figure 3. Alizarin red S staining and osteogenic biomarker expression of C3H10T1/2 cells transfected with si-*Ifitm2* after 5 days of osteogenic induction. (A) Alizarin red S staining indicated a decrease in calcium deposition in the si- *Ifitm2* group compared with siRNA negative control (si-NC) and transection reagent only (mock) groups. **(B)** Quantification of alizarin red S staining indicated that si-*Ifitm2* reduced the mineralization capacity from 49.19% to 41.89% compared with si-NC. **(C)** Representative bands of COL1A1, ALP, RUNX2, OCN, and GAPDH in western blots. **(D)** Quantification of the band intensities. Protein levels were normalized to GAPDH. Magnification: ×10. $^{*}P < 0.05$, $^{***}P < 0.001$.

action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=177). Clearly, *Ifitm2* knockdown by siRNAs changed the expression of genes involved in the Wnt signaling pathway, including Wnt receptors *Lgr4*, *Fzd1*, *Fzd3-7*, *Lrp8*, and *Lrp11*, *Wnt* family members *Wnt4*, *Wnt6*, *Wnt10a*, and *Wnt10b*, and *Znrf1* and *Rnf43* (Figure 4C).

GO analysis was performed to evaluate related biological processe (BP), cell components (CC) and molecular functions (MF) of the identified genes on the basis of their variability ranking. GO enrichment analyses revealed 1174 BP entries involving the ncRNA metabolic process, ncRNA processing, ribonucleoprotein complex biogenesis, muscle tissue development, tRNA metabolic process, ribosome biogenesis, negative regulation of cell cycle, 150 CC entries involving the transcription regulator complex, nuclear speck, preribosome, spindle, spliceosomal complex, nuclear envelope, and 149 MF entries involving the inositol phosphate phosphatase activity, histone deacetylase binding, protein kinase regulator activity, RNA methyltransferase activity,

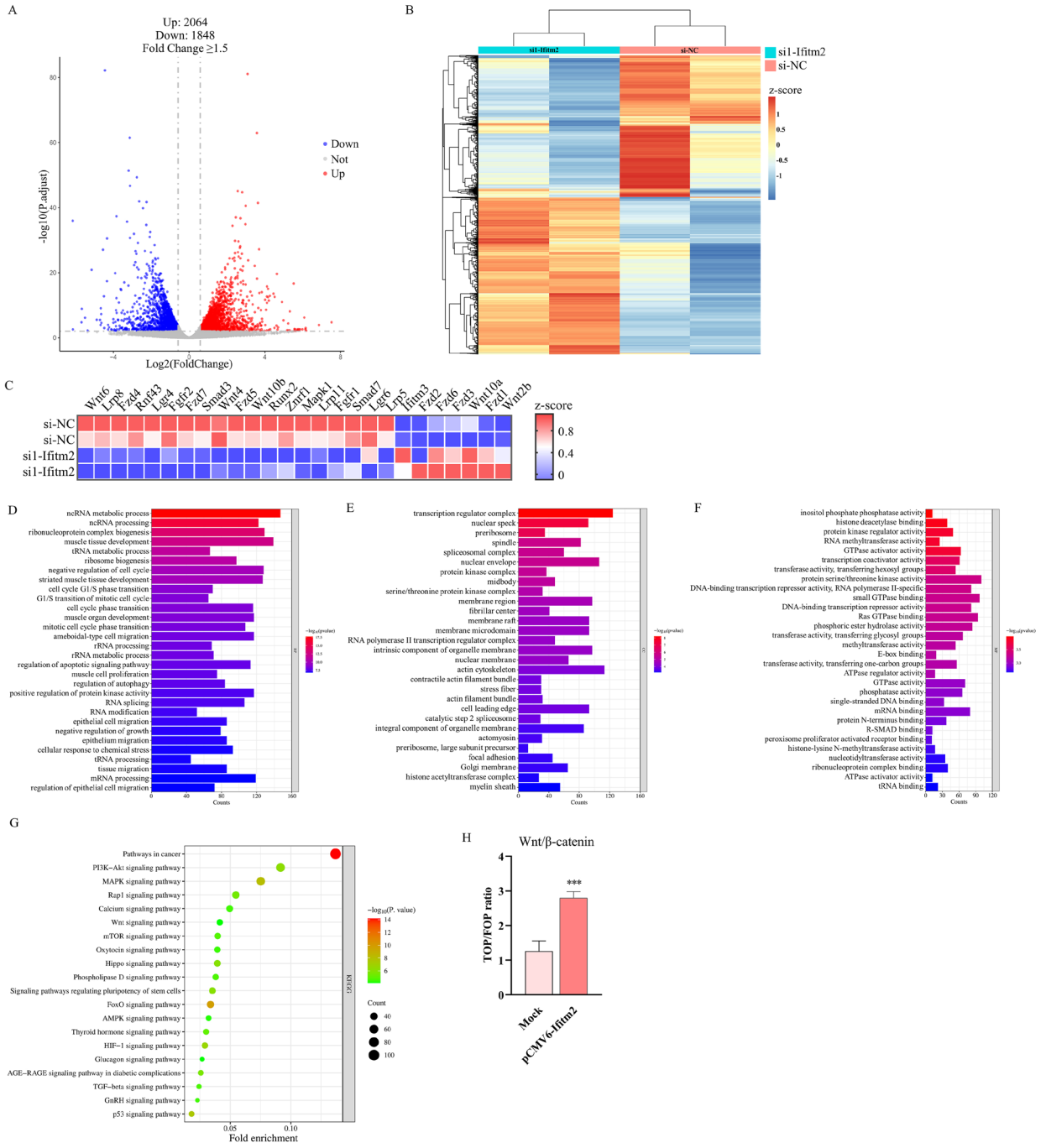


Figure 4. Volcano plot, heat map, GO, and KEGG analyses of RNA-sequencing data. **(A)** Volcano plots of significantly differentially expressed genes (FDR < 0.05 and |FC| ≥ 1.5; red, upregulated; blue, downregulated). **(B)** Heat map showing 3912 significantly (FDR < 0.05) differentially expressed genes between si1-*Ifitm2* and si-NC groups. Each row of the heat map represents the z-score transformed $\log_2$(1+FPKM) values of one differentially expressed gene across all samples (blue, low expression; red, high expression). **(C)** Significantly differentially expressed genes related to the Wnt signaling pathway. **(D–F)** Biological process (top 30), cellular components (top 30), molecular functions (top 30), and **(G)** KEGG enrichment analysis (top 20) of differentially expressed genes, respectively. **(H)** TOP/FOP luciferase reporter assays in HEK293T cells. TOP/FOP luciferase reporter activity was enhanced by *Ifitm2* overexpression.

GTPase activator activity, transcription coactivator activity (Figure 4D-F).

KEGG pathway analysis showed that the genes were mainly enriched in pathways in cancer, the PI3K-Akt signaling pathway, MAPK signaling pathway, Wnt signaling pathway, and signaling pathways regulating pluripotency of stem cells (Figure 4G). Among the dysregulated genes, we focused on the Wnt/β-catenin pathway and confirmed the results using a dual luciferase reporter assay. TOP/FOP luciferase reporter assays indicated that *Ifitm2* overexpression promoted luciferase activity to 2.2 fold (Figure 4H).

3.4. IFITM2 expression in mouse tibial tissue

To investigate the distribution of IFITM2 in bone-forming

tissue, we performed double immunofluorescence staining of mouse hind limb tissue sections to observe cells undergoing osteogenic differentiation. DAPI stains nuclei specifically (Figure 5A, E and I), IFITM2 were mainly detected in in growth plate cartilage and the trabecular bone area on the growth plate that has a high bone remodeling activity (Figure 5B, F and J). SP7 is a key transcriptional determinant of bone-secreting osteoblasts. It was expressed also in osteoblast on the surface of trabecular bone and cartilage (Figure 5C, E and K). Co-staining revealed that the entire tibia bone was positive for IFITM2 and SP7, which co-localized in the articular cartilage and metaphyseal bone (Figure 5D, H and L).

4. Discussion

Mesenchymal cells are ideal for stem cell-based therapy and have the capacity to differentiate into osteoblasts, chondrocytes, adipocytes, and myoblasts (*1,22*). Osteoblastogenesis is tightly regulated by complex cytokine networks under physiological and pathophysiological conditions (*2*). The IFITM family is well known for their functions in viral infection and innate immunity (*17,23-25*). IFITM5 is an osteoblast-specific membrane protein and functions as a positive regulatory factor for bone mineralization (*26,27*). IFITM5 affects Wnt signaling during tooth root development, although their interactions remain unclear (*28*). Wnt/β-catenin signaling is a major signaling pathway regulating skeletal mineralization (*29*). Downregulation of Wnt/β-catenin signaling by knockout of β-catenin in odontoblasts and cementoblasts inhibits tooth root development *in vivo* and *in vitro* (*30*). In our study, the expression of Wnt family members and their receptors, including *Lrp*, *fizzled*, and *Lgr*, was changed by downregulating *Ifitm2* expression. Moreover, expression of Rnf43, a transmembrane molecule that downregulates Wnt signaling, was decreased (*31*).

In the IFITM family, IFITM2 is a relatively newly evolved gene, and it is only present in *Homo sapiens*, *Gorilla gorilla*, and *Pan paniscus* of 26 primate species (*32*). Structurally, unlike IFITM1, which has an extended C-terminal, IFITM2 and IFITM3 have extended N-termini with an extra 20 or 21 amino acids (*33*). IFITM2 restricts entry of the CXCR4-tropic virus (*17*) and is positively associated with malignant gliomas. Enhanced *IFITM2* expression in glioblastomas predicts a malignant phenotype (*34*). In colon cancer, *IFITM2* is a novel p53-independent proapoptotic gene and highly expressed (*35*). Therefore, it is a potential therapeutic target for gastric and other cancers (*36*).

In this study, we found that *Ifitm2* was involved in osteogenic differentiation of C3H10T1/2 cells. It was upregulated during osteogenic differentiation, and knocking down *Ifitm2* led to downregulation of osteogenesis markers. Transcriptome profiling and TOP/FOP assays revealed the involvement of Wnt/β-catenin signaling induction in *Ifitm2* overexpression, which indicated a potential interaction of *Ifitm2* with the canonical Wnt signaling pathway contributing to osteogenic differentiation. However, how IFITM2

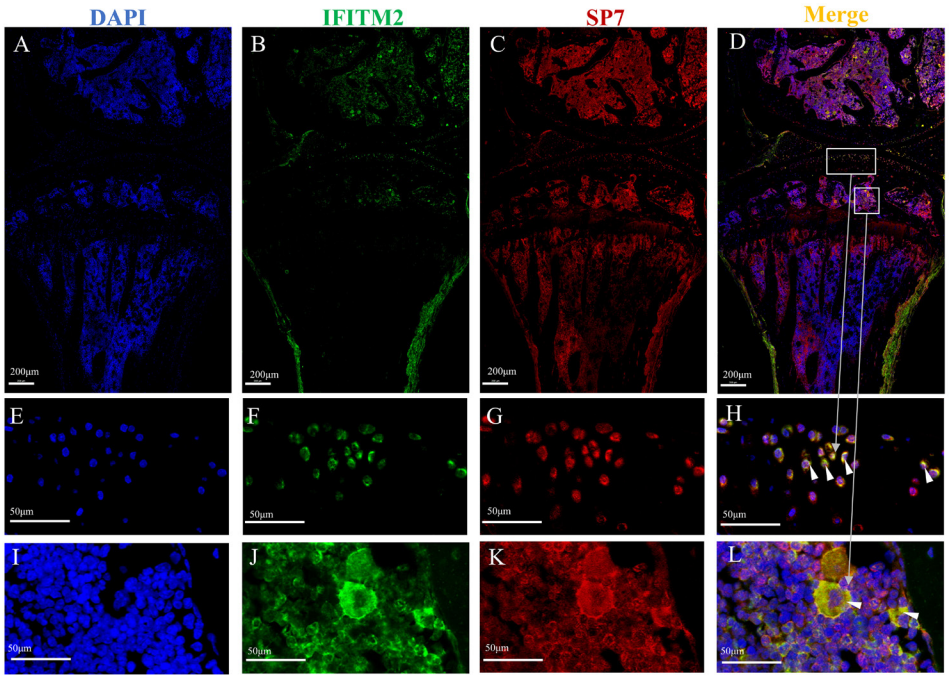


Figure 5. Expression of IFITM2 examined by histology in mice. (A–D) Representative immunofluorescence staining of IFITM2 (green) and SP7 (red) in the hind limb bone of 15-week-old mice. Scale bars, 200 μm. **(E–H)** Articular cartilage and **(I–L)** metaphyseal bone regions magnified to display positive cells. White arrow indicates IFITM2 and SP7 co-localization in endochondral ossification centers and articular cartilage. Scale bar: 50 μm. DAPI (blue) was used to counterstain nuclei.

interacts with the Wnt signaling pathway and whether it has similar mechanisms to IFITM5 in osteogenic differentiation remain unclear.

IFITM protein overexpression promotes interferon-β production (*37*). In early osteoblastic differentiation, IFN inhibits ECM synthesis, leading to delayed bone formation (*38*). Hence, we hypothesized that upregulated expression of IFITM2 during osteogenic differentiation may be independent of interferon and involve the canonical Wnt signaling pathway. A shortcoming of this study is that further experiments are needed to support an association between the canonical Wnt signaling pathway and overexpression or knockdown of *Ifitm2*, and we did not reveal the relationship between *Ifitm2* and Wnt the signaling pathway in detail.

Funding: This work was supported by a grant from the Natural Science Foundation of Shandong Province (General program ZR2023MH276) and Academic Promotion Program of Shandong First Medical University (LJ001).

Conflict of Interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

1. Pittenger MF, Mackay AM, Beck SC, Jaiswal RK, Douglas R, Mosca JD, Moorman MA, Simonetti DW, Craig S, Marshak DR. Multilineage potential of adult human mesenchymal stem cells. Science. 1999; 284:143-147.
2. Amarasekara DS, Kim S, Rho J. Regulation of Osteoblast Differentiation by Cytokine Networks. Int J Mol Sci. 2021; 22.
3. Huang W, Yang S, Shao J, Li YP. Signaling and transcriptional regulation in osteoblast commitment and differentiation. Front Biosci. 2007; 12:3068-3092.
4. Stein GS, Lian JB. Molecular mechanisms mediating proliferation/differentiation interrelationships during progressive development of the osteoblast phenotype. Endocr Rev. 1993; 14:424-442.
5. Rutkovskiy A, Stensløkken KO, Vaage IJ. Osteoblast Differentiation at a Glance. Med Sci Monit Basic Res. 2016; 22:95-106.
6. Glass DA, 2nd, Bialek P, Ahn JD, Starbuck M, Patel MS, Clevers H, Taketo MM, Long F, McMahon AP, Lang RA, Karsenty G. Canonical Wnt signaling in differentiated osteoblasts controls osteoclast differentiation. Dev Cell. 2005; 8:751-764.
7. Lin X, Patil S, Gao YG, Qian A. The Bone Extracellular Matrix in Bone Formation and Regeneration. Front Pharmacol. 2020; 11:757.
8. Takayanagi H, Kim S, Matsuo K, Suzuki H, Suzuki T, Sato K, Yokochi T, Oda H, Nakamura K, Ida N, Wagner EF, Taniguchi T. RANKL maintains bone homeostasis through c-Fos-dependent induction of interferon-beta. Nature. 2002; 416:744-749.
9. Kota SK, Roening C, Patel N, Kota SB, Baron R. PRMT5 inhibition promotes osteogenic differentiation of mesenchymal stromal cells and represses basal interferon stimulated gene expression. Bone. 2018; 117:37-46.
10. Deng Z, Ng C, Inoue K, Chen Z, Xia Y, Hu X, Greenblatt M, Pernis A, Zhao B. Def6 regulates endogenous type-I interferon responses in osteoblasts and suppresses osteogenesis. eLife. 2020; 9.
11. Zhao X, Li J, Winkler CA, An P, Guo JT. IFITM Genes, Variants, and Their Roles in the Control and Pathogenesis of Viral Infections. Front Microbiol. 2018; 9:3228.
12. Liao Y, Goraya MU, Yuan X, Zhang B, Chiu SH, Chen JL. Functional Involvement of Interferon-Inducible Transmembrane Proteins in Antiviral Immunity. Front Microbiol. 2019; 10:1097.
13. Bailey CC, Zhong G, Huang IC, Farzan M. IFITM-Family Proteins: The Cell's First Line of Antiviral Defense. Annu Rev Virol. 2014; 1:261-283.
14. Lu Y, Zuo Q, Zhang Y, Wang Y, Li T, Han J. The expression profile of IFITM family gene in rats. Intractable Rare Dis Res. 2017; 6:274-280.
15. Warren CJ, Griffin LM, Little AS, Huang IC, Farzan M, Pyeon D. The antiviral restriction factors IFITM1, 2 and 3 do not inhibit infection of human papillomavirus, cytomegalovirus and adenovirus. PloS One. 2014; 9:e96579.
16. Prelli Bozzo C, Nchioua R, Volcic M, *et al*. IFITM proteins promote SARS-CoV-2 infection and are targets for virus inhibition *in vitro*. Nat Commun. 2021; 12:4584.
17. Gómez-Herranz M, Taylor J, Sloan RD. IFITM proteins: Understanding their diverse roles in viral infection, cancer, and immunity. J Biol Chem. 2023; 299:102741.
18. Zhang Y, Lu Y, Li X, Zhang S, Liu P, Hao X, Han J. The novel role of IFITM1-3 in myogenic differentiation of C2C12 cells. Intractable Rare Dis Res. 2023; 12:180-190.
19. Kim D, Paggi JM, Park C, Bennett C, Salzberg SL. Graph-based genome alignment and genotyping with HISAT2 and HISAT-genotype. Nat Biotechnol. 2019; 37:907-915.
20. Liao Y, Smyth GK, Shi W. featureCounts: An efficient general purpose program for assigning sequence reads to genomic features. Bioinformatics (Oxford, England). 2014; 30:923-930.
21. Robinson MD, McCarthy DJ, Smyth GK. edgeR: a Bioconductor package for differential expression analysis of digital gene expression data. Bioinformatics (Oxford, England). 2010; 26:139-140.
22. Ding DC, Shyu WC, Lin SZ. Mesenchymal stem cells. Cell Transplant. 2011; 20:5-14.
23. Chmielewska AM, Gómez-Herranz M, Gach P, Nekulova M, Bagnucka MA, Lipińska AD, Rychłowski M, Hoffmann W, Król E, Vojtesek B, Sloan RD, Bieńkowska-Szewczyk K, Hupp T, Ball K. The Role of IFITM Proteins in Tick-Borne Encephalitis Virus Infection. J Virol. 2022; 96:e0113021.
24. Smith SE, Busse DC, Binter S, *et al*. Interferon-Induced Transmembrane Protein 1 Restricts Replication of Viruses That Enter Cells *via* the Plasma Membrane. J Virol. 2019; 93.
25. Tartour K, Cimarelli A. IFITM, a common barrier to many viruses. Med Sci (Paris). 2015; 31:377-382. (in French)
26. Moffatt P, Salois P, Gaumond MH, St-Amant N, Godin E, Lanctôt C. Engineered viruses to select genes encoding secreted and membrane-bound proteins in mammalian cells. Nucleic Acids Res. 2002; 30:4285-4294.
27. Hanagata N, Takemura T, Monkawa A, Ikoma T, Tanaka J. Phenotype and gene expression pattern of osteoblast-like cells cultured on polystyrene and hydroxyapatite with pre-

adsorbed type-I collagen. J Biomed Mater Res A. 2007; 83:362-371.
28. Kim EJ, Lee MJ, Kim HY, Green DW, Takata T, Jung HS. Inhibitory effect of IFITM5 on cementoblast differentiation is associated with Wnt signaling. Acta Biochim Biophys Sin (Shanghai). 2018; 50:1176-1179.
29. Zhou Y, Lin J, Shao J, Zuo Q, Wang S, Wolff A, Nguyen DT, Rintoul L, Du Z, Gu Y, Peng YY, Ramshaw JAM, Long X, Xiao Y. Aberrant activation of Wnt signaling pathway altered osteocyte mineralization. Bone. 2019; 127:324-333.
30. Zhang R, Yang G, Wu X, Xie J, Yang X, Li T. Disruption of Wnt/β-catenin signaling in odontoblasts and cementoblasts arrests tooth root development in postnatal mouse teeth. Int J Biol Sci. 2013; 9:228-236.
31. Koo BK, Spit M, Jordens I, Low TY, Stange DE, van de Wetering M, van Es JH, Mohammed S, Heck AJ, Maurice MM, Clevers H. Tumour suppressor RNF43 is a stem-cell E3 ligase that induces endocytosis of Wnt receptors. Nature. 2012; 488:665-669.
32. Schelle L, Abrantes J, Baldauf HM, Esteves PJ. Evolution of primate interferon-induced transmembrane proteins (IFITMs): A story of gain and loss with a differentiation into a canonical cluster and IFITM retrogenes. Front Microbiol. 2023; 14:1213685.
33. Siegrist F, Ebeling M, Certa U. The small interferon-induced transmembrane genes and proteins. J Interferon Cytokine Res. 2011; 31:183-197.
34. Liang T, Wang X, Wang Y, Ma W. IFN-γ Triggered IFITM2 Expression to Induce Malignant Phenotype in Elderly GBM. J Mol Neurosci. 2023; doi: 10.1007/s12031-023-02156-5.
35. Daniel-Carmi V, Makovitzki-Avraham E, Reuven EM, Goldstein I, Zilkha N, Rotter V, Tzehoval E, Eisenbach L. The human 1-8D gene (IFITM2) is a novel p53 independent pro-apoptotic gene. Int J Cancer. 2009; 125:2810-2819.
36. Liu Y, Zhou M, Wu J, Wen Z, Fang Y, Lin L, Luo M, Sun L, Liao W. Interferon-induced transmembrane protein 2 promotes epithelial-mesenchymal transition by activating transforming growth factor-β1/small mother against decapentaplegic 2 signaling in gastric cancer. Mol Biol Rep. 2022; 49:997-1006.
37. Chen L, Li X, Deng Y, Bi Y, Yan Z, Yang Y, Zhang X, Li H, Xie J, Feng R. IFITM2 Presents Antiviral Response through Enhancing Type I IFN Signaling Pathway. Viruses. 2023; 15:866.
38. Woeckel VJ, Eijken M, van de Peppel J, Chiba H, van der Eerden BC, van Leeuwen JP. IFNβ impairs extracellular matrix formation leading to inhibition of mineralization by effects in the early stage of human osteoblast differentiation. J Cell Physiol. 2012; 227:2668-2676.

Received November 22, 2023; Revised December 20, 2023; Accepted December 22, 2023.

*Address correspondence to:
Yanqin Lu and Jinxiang Han, The First Affiliated Hospital of Shandong First Medical University & Shandong Provincial Qianfoshan Hospital, No. 16766 Jingshi Road, Ji'nan, Shandong 250013, China.
E-mail: yqlu@sdfmu.edu.cn (LYQ), jxhan@sdfmu.edu.cn (HJX)

Released online in J-STAGE as advance publication December 25, 2023.

Original Article

DOI: 10.5582/irdr.2023.01112

Surgical outcomes of locally advanced gastrointestinal stromal tumors after multivisceral resection: A retrospective study of 64 patients at a single institution

Hui Qiu[§], Zhen Wang[§], Bonan Liu, Rongze Sun, Xiuyun Tian, Chunyi Hao[*]

Key Laboratory of Carcinogenesis and Translational Research (Ministry of Education, Beijing), Department of Hepato-Pancreato-Biliary Surgery, Sarcoma Center, Peking University Cancer Hospital and Institute, Beijing, China.

SUMMARY To analyze the outcome in patients who have undergone multivisceral resection (MVR) for locally advanced gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs), and identify the risk factors for tumor recurrence and postoperative morbidity. Sixty-four patients who operated for locally advanced GISTs with MVR in PPeking University Cancer Hospital Sarcoma Center (PUCHSC) between 2013 and 2021 were identified. Clinicopathologic characteristics, surgical outcomes, recurrence, and 5-year recurrence-free and overall survival were evaluated. The mean age of the patients was 60 years. Mean tumor size was 11.1 cm. Complete resection was achieved in all patients. The estimated 5-year recurrence-free and overall survival were 86.6% and 90.0%, respectively. Independent factor of recurrence following surgery was mitotic count on multivariate analysis. Overall postoperative morbidity was 53.1% (*n* = 34). Severe morbidity was 21.9% (*n* = 14). The most common severe complication was clinically relevant pancreatic fistula (*n* = 12, 18.8%), followed by anastomotic leakage (*n* = 4, 6.3%) and Intraabdominal abscess (*n* = 4, 6.3%). Multivariate analysis showed that preoperative imatinib therapy could reduce overall morbidity. Long operation time, combined colectomy and pancreatectomy were independent risk factors for postoperative severe morbidity. Compared to partial pancreatectomy, pancreaticoduodenectomy (PD) was significantly increased the incidence of severe morbidity. In conclusion, compared to systemic therapy alone, the outcome of locally advanced GISTs after MVR was more favorable. Despite the high overall morbidity, the postoperative severe morbidity and mortality of MVR were acceptable. Preoperative imatinib therapy should be recommended whenever possible. Combined pancreatectomy and colectomy are associated with significant postoperative severe morbidities. PD should be thoroughly discussed and be subject to MDT approach before surgery.

Keywords gastrointestinal stromal tumors; multivisceral resection; postoperative morbidity; pancreatectomy; surgical outcomes

1. Introduction

Gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs) are the most common mesenchymal tumors of the gastrointestinal tract, and surgery was the mainstay of curative treatment. Although the majority of GISTs could underwent minimal invasive surgery at presentation, a significant number of GISTs are locally advanced, requiring more challenging and complex operations. In a recent study, 11% of 908 GISTs required multivisceral resection (MVR) to achieve complete resection (*1*).

The long-term outcome of unresectable locally advanced GISTs was extremely poor, with a median overall survival time of 3.9 years and 10-year overall survival rates of 20% (*2*). Although imatinib therapy prior to surgery was recommended by most guidelines, which may play an important role by downsizing the tumor, in this way decreasing the extent of resection, unfortunately the reported response rate was not satisfactory (SD/PD cases ranged from 18.6-83%) (*3-5*). Once downsizing failed, MVR remains the only chance of cure. The reported 5-year OS for locally advanced GISTs after MVR ranged from 66.9-80.2% (*6-8*). However, the risk factors associated with recurrence were not well described.

In addition, the safety of MVR remains controversial. In 2015, a retrospective study was reported by Racz (*6*), who compared the perioperative outcomes of 110 patients who required MVR versus single-organ resection (SOR) for GISTs, and concluded that MVR had more

complications than SOR. However, another study with opposite conclusions was published 2 years later. With a series of 187 GISTs, there was no significant difference in in-hospital morbidity and mortality on comparison of MVR versus SOR groups (*7*).

The aim of the study was to analyze the short and long-term outcome of patients who underwent MVR for locally advanced GISTs and identify the risk factors for tumor recurrence and postoperative morbidity.

2. Materials and Methods

2.1. Patients

The study was carried out under the approval of the Ethics Committee of Peking University Cancer Hospital. All patients gave informed consent according to the procedures required by the Institutional Review Board of Peking University Cancer Hospital and Institute and in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki. All consecutive patients who operated for GISTs with MVR in Peking University Cancer Hospital Sarcoma Center (PUCHSC) between 2013 and 2021 were retrospectively investigated. Clinicopathological data were reviewed from the medical records. All patients had complete preoperative imaging (thorax, abdomen, and pelvic CT scan or MRI) and an image-guided percutaneous coaxial core needle biopsy. Decisions were made by multi-disciplinary team (MDT), and operations were performed by same surgical group. Histopathological results were systematically confirmed by an expert pathologist in soft tissue sarcomas.

2.2. Postoperative morbidities and follow-up

Postoperative morbidities (POM) were graded according to the seven grades of the Clavien-Dindo classification (I, II, IIIa, IIIb, IVa, IVb, and V), and considered severe in case of grade ≥ 3. Postoperative pancreatic fistulas (POPF) were reported according to the International Study Group for Pancreatic Fistula (ISGPF) score, and grade B and C were considered "severe". The patients were prospectively followed with clinical examination, chest X-ray, and abdominopelvic computed tomography (CT) or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) every three months for the first two years, every six months for the next three years, and yearly thereafter.

2.3. Statistical analysis

Patient characteristics, operative factors, and type of MVR were compared between patients who did and did not experience severe morbidity. Univariate and multivariate logistic regression analyses were conducted to identify independent risk factors for severe morbidity. Overall survival (OS) was defined as the time from surgery to last follow-up or death. Disease-free survival (DFS)was defined as the time from surgery to recurrence or metastasis, last follow-up or death, whichever occurred first. OS and DFS were estimated by Kaplan–Meier method. Statistical analysis was performed using SPSS 22.0.

3. Results

3.1. Patient characteristics

Sixty-four patients with locally advanced GISTs underwent MVR in our institution between 2013 and 2021. Median age at surgery was 60 years. Twenty-six (41%) patients had received neoadjuvant imatinib therapy. Complete resection was achieved in all patients. The mean tumor size was 11.1 cm, and median number of resected contiguous organ for each patient was 2. The most common resected contiguous organ was pancreas (62.5%), followed by spleen (43.8%) and colon (43.8%). Forty-two (66%) patients received adjuvant imatinib therapy within one month after surgery. Demographic and clinicopathological data are summarized in Table 1. The median follow-up was 55 months.

3.2. Postoperative morbidity

Postoperative overall morbidity was 53.1% (*n* = 34), and severe morbidity was 21.9% (*n* = 14). The most common

Table 1. Demographic and clinico-pathological data

Characteristics	*n* = 64 (100%)
Sex: male/female [ratio]	30/34 [0.88]
Median age, years [range]	60 [29–80]
Tumor site	
Gastric	32 (50)
Small bowel	32 (50)
Preoperative imatinib therapy	26 (41)
Postoperative imatinib therapy	42 (66)
Surgery	
Multiviceral resection (MVR)	64 (100)
Median number of resected contiguous organ [range]	2 [1–6]
Associated resections	
Pancreas	40 (62.5)
Spleen	28 (43.8)
Colon	28 (43.8)
Diaphragm	10 (15.6)
Liver	8 (12.5)
Other (lung, kidney, adrenal gland, uterus, bladder)	16 (25)
Median operative time (min) [range]	325 [130–518]
Median perioperative bleeding (mL) [range]	400 [20–2300]
Pathological finding	
Mean tumor size at resection specimen, cm [range]	11.1 [5–26]
Complete resection	64 (100)
Microscopic organ involvement Mutational status	20 (31.3)
KIT exon 11 mutation	40 (62.5)
KIT exon 9 mutation	14 (21.9)
KIT exon 13 mutation	4 (6.3)
PDGFRA exon 18	4 (6.3)
Wild-type	2 (3.1)

severe complication was clinically relevant pancreatic fistula (n = 12, 18.8%), followed by anastomotic leakage (n = 4, 6.3%) and Intraabdominal deep abscess (n = 4, 6.3%). Most severe complications could be managed by percutaneous drainage successfully, and only two patients (1.6%) required surgical reintervention for acute peritonitis secondary to anastomotic leakage and hemorrhage. Postoperative complications are illustrated in Table 2. Multivariate analysis showed that preoperative imatinib therapy was independent risk factor for overall morbidity. Long operation time, combined colectomy and pancreatectomy were independent risk factors for severe morbidity (Table 3). More patients had received neoadjuvant imatinib in non-morbidity group (53.3% vs 29.4%), and patients in severe morbidity group were more likely to have combined pancreatectomy (92.9% vs 54%) and colectomy (78.6% vs 34.0%,) when compared with patients in non-severe morbidity group.

Among patients who had combined pancreatectomy, the majority received distal pancreatectomy (DP) (n = 24, 60%), followed by pancreaticoduodenectomy (PD) (n = 8, 20%), and partial pancreatectomy (PP) (n = 8, 20%). Compared to PP group, severe morbidity in the PD group was significantly higher (p = 0.024), while there was no difference between DP and PP groups (p = 0.468) (Table 4).

Table 2. Postoperative complications

Cases (n)	64 (100%)
Overall morbidity	34 (53.1)
Severe morbidity (Clavien- Dindo III–IV or POPF Grade B and C*)	14 (21.9)
Postoperative Pancreatic Fistula	12 (18.8)
Anastomotic leakage	4 (6.3)
Intraabdominal deep abscess	4 (6.3)
Postoperative Hemorrhage Grade C	2 (3.1)
Acute renal failure	1 (1.6)
Reoperation	2 (3.1)
Postoperative death (day 90)	0

3.3. DFS and OS

The estimated OS and RFS at 5 years were 90.0% and 86.6%, respectively. Eight patients experienced tumor recurrence. Univariate analysis showed that tumor size, mitotic rate and postoperative imatinib therapy was associated with tumor recurrence. However, only high mitotic rate was proved to be independent risk factor by Multivariate analysis (Table 5).

4. Discussion

Locally advanced GISTs represent a clinical challenge, and the prognosis of unresectable cases was extremely poor. In our study cohort, 64 patients underwent MVR for locally advanced GISTs. The 5-year OS and DFS were 90% and 86.6%, which confirmed that MVR could do benefit to selected patients.

In this series, the common indications for MVR include downsizing failure, emergent operations and judgment difficulty. Firstly, some locally advanced GISTs cannot be downsized successfully by neoadjuvant imatinib. The reported response rate of SD/PD cases ranged from 18.6-83% in different studies (*3-5*). For patients of downsizing failure, surgical complexity has not decreased, and MVR is unavoidable. Secondly, GISTs may present with acute abdomen, obstruction, perforation or rupture and peritonitis. In the event of such an emergency, MVR may be forced. According to a

Table 4. Analysis of different type of pancreatectomy for severe morbidity

Items	Severe morbidity	Non-severe morbidity	P-value
No. of patients	13	27	
Partial pancreatectomy	1	7	-
Distal pancreatectomy	6	18	0.468
Pancreaticoduodenectomy	6	2	0.024

Table 3. Univariate and multivariate analysis of risk factors for overall and severe morbidity

Items	Overall Morbidity group	Non-morbidity group	Univariate analyses P-value	Multivariate analyses P-value	Severe morbidity group	Non-severe morbidity group	Univariate analyses P-value	Multivariate analyses P-value
No. of patients	34	30			14	50		
Age (years)	57.7	57.3	0.933	-	56.7	57.7	0.811	-
Sex (male)	12 (35.2%)	18 (60.0%)	0.143	-	6 (42.9%)	24 (48.0%)	0.529	-
Preoperative Imatinib	10 (29.4%)	16 (53.3 %)	0.003	0.048	7 (50%)	19 (38.0%)	0.347	-
Tumor site			0.316	-			0.546	-
Stomach	16 (47.1%)	16 (53.3%)			6 (42.9 %)	26 (52.0%)		
Small intestine	18 (52.9%)	14 (46.7 %)			8 (57.1%)	24 (48.0%)		
Mean tumor size (cm)	9.9	12.5	0.008	0.065	8.6	11.8	0.054	-
Operative factors								
Resected organ ≥ 3	6 (17.6%)	10 (33.3%)	0.285	-	4 (28.6%)	12 (24.0%)	0.727	-
+Pancreatectomy	30 (88.2%)	10 (33.3%)	0.247	-	13 (92.9%)	27 (54.0%)	0.025	0.003
+splenectomy	16 (47.1%)	12 (40.0%)	0.950	-	6 (42.9%)	22 (44%)	0.939	
+colectomy	16 (47.1%)	12 (40.0%)	0.617	-	11 (78.6%)	17 (34.0%)	0.048	0.016
Operation time (min)	350	296	0.381	-	403	302	0.001	0.014
Blood loss (mL)	819	467	0.976	-	1000	557	0.045	0.272

Table 5. Univariate and multivariate analysis of RFS

Items	Non-recurrence group	Recurrence group	Univariate analyses *P*-value	Multivariate analyses *P*-value
No. of patients	56	8		
Age (yrs)	56.8	63.0	0.180	-
Sex (male)	29 (51.2%)	1 (12.5%)	0.067	0.082
Preoperative Imatinib	22 (39.3%)	4 (50%)	0.850	
Emergency	4 (7.1%)	2 (25%)	0.130	0.099
Tumor site			1.000	-
Stomach	28 (50%)	4 (50%)		
Small bowel	28 (50%)	4 (50%)		
Tumor size (cm)			0.026	0.418
< 15	48 (85.7%)	4 (50%)		
≥ 15	8 (14.3%)	4 (50%)		
Mitotic rate per 50 HPF			0.006	0.044
> 5	12 (21.4%)	6 (75%)		
≤ 5	44 (78.6%)	2 (25%)		
Microscopic organ involvement	18 (32.1%)	2 (25%)	0.685	
Postoperative Imatinib	40 (71.4%)	2 (25%)	0.020	0.206
Overall morbidity	31 (55.4%)	3 (37.5%)	0.351	-
Severe morbidity	11 (19.6%)	3 (37.5%)	0.264	-
Operative factors				
Resected organ ≥ 3	14 (25%)	2 (25%)	1.000	-
Operation time (min)	325	326.5	0.966	-
Blood loss (mL)	663	450	0.405	-

report by Magdy, among 92 GISTs-related emergencies, 2 patients required MVR (*9*). Finally, in some cases, although downsized successfully, the tumor is still close to neighboring organs. It is difficult to make a sound judgment whether the tumor is adherence or infiltration of the surrounding organs. To ensure complete resection and avoid iatrogenic tumor rupture, en bloc resection of adjacent organs is still required (*10*). Other less common causes of MVR in this study include being misdiagnosed as primary retroperitoneal sarcoma, intolerance to imatinib and wide-type GISTs. In addition, microscopic contiguous organ involvement could be observed in more than 30% cases, proving that MVR is sometimes necessary to achieve complete resection.

Established prognostic factors for GISTs are tumor site, tumor size, mitotic count and tumor rupture (*11-13*). However, on multivariate analysis of this study, only high mitotic count was associated with recurrence. More tumors originated in the duodenum and the larger tumor volumes was observed in this series, which might be one of the reasons for the discrepancy. DeMatteo and colleagues proved that size > 10 cm was independently prognostic factors of RFS for GISTs (*13*). However, most tumors in our study were larger than 10cm. therefore, the analysis value we chose was 15 cm. On univariate analysis, larger tumor size was associated with tumor recurrence, but not proved by multivariate analysis.

Tumor rupture was considered to be associated with a substantially higher risk of tumor recurrence. Patients with intraoperative rupture of GIST into the peritoneal cavity had a risk of recurrence (*14*). In the present study, there was no tumor rupture occurred and the 5-year RFS in patients who underwent MVR for locally advanced GISTs was excellent, which might be due to the aggressiveness of MVR. Firstly, we do not attempt to separate the tumor from the surrounding involvement organs in order to avoid exposing the tumor and make a resection similar to "compartment resection". Secondly, an "anterior approach" was routinely used to avoid compression and rotate the tumor. Undoubtedly, such an "no-touch" surgical technique could minimize the risk of iatrogenic tumor rupture.

In this study, MVR was proved to be a more complicated surgical procedure The median number of resected contiguous organ for each patient was 2, and half of the tumors originated in the duodenum and the mean tumor size was 11.1 cm, leading a result in much higher proportion of combined pancreatectomy. The morbidity of pancreatectomy remains high even in high-volume centers. In a report from the Transatlantic RPS Working Group, the overall morbidity was 64% for patients with soft tissue sarcoma who underwent surgery requiring pancreas resection (*15*). Therefore, the overall morbidity in this cohort was higher than reports in the literature (*16-18*). The benefits of MVR must be balanced against the risks associated with the operation.

Fortunately, preoperative imatinib could significantly reduce the overall morbidity. Most GISTs are fragile and hypervascular, leading the high risk of bleeding and tumor rupture. Imatinib can reduce the blood supply and make the tumor robust, which may facilitate surgical procedure and reduce postoperative complications (*17*). In a retrospective study of 25 advanced GISTs patients who underwent surgery after preoperative imatinib therapy, no postoperative complications appeared (*18*). In a prospective phase II study, designed to evaluate safety and efficacy of neoadjuvant imatinib for patients with advanced primary and metastatic/recurrent operable

GISTs, the complications of surgery were also minimal (*4*). Based on these results, preoperative imatinib therapy should be recommended whenever possible.

Our data showed that pancreatectomy was associated with significant severe morbidity of MVR. Twelve (18.8%) patients had a clinically relevant (grade B or C) POPF, which is slightly higher than data of ISGPF (*19*). It might be related to normal pancreatic duct, soft pancreas tissue and imatinib associated edema for GISTs. Two patients had a postoperative hemorrhage (grade C, 3.1%) which was comparable to the results in the literature (*20*) and both of them had undergone a combined PD. Compared to partial pancreatectomy, PD was more complicated and required more operation time, which was another independent risk factor for severe morbidity after MVR in this study. Therefore, in our center PD should be thoroughly discussed and the patient should be fully informed about the risks before surgery.

Furthermore, nearly 40% of patients had combined colectomies in the cohort. Addition of colectomy to pancreatectomy could aggravate the severity of pancreatic fistula. Swchartz (*21*) reported that the 90-day morbidity and mortality rate in patients of simultaneous pancreatectomy with colectomy were 61% and 14% respectively, which was much higher than pancreatectomy alone (42% and 3%, $P < 0.01$). To mitigate mortality risk, a diverting loop ileostomy was selectively done for patients of MVR requiring combined colectomy. By reducing the enteral stream across the anastomosis, the morbidity associated with a colonic leak could potentially be avoided. Although the patients had to undergo stomal closure three months later, no fistula-related perioperative deaths occurred in this series.

In conclusion, compared to systemic therapy alone, the outcome of locally advanced GISTs after MVR was more favorable. Despite the high overall morbidity, the postoperative severe morbidity and mortality of MVR were acceptable. Preoperative imatinib therapy should be recommended whenever possible. Combined pancreatectomy and colectomy are associated with significant postoperative severe morbidities. PD should be thoroughly discussed and be subject to MDT approach before surgery.

Funding: This work was supported by the Beijing Xisike Clinical Oncology Research Foundation (approval No.: Y-Young2021-0111), Beijing Municipal Administration of Hospitals' Ascent Plan (approval No.: DFL20181104), Beijing Municipal Administration of Hospitals Clinical Medicine Development of Special Funding Support (approval No.: XMLX201708), the Capital Health Research and Development of Special Funds (approval No.: 2016-2-2151), and National Natural Science Funding (approval No.: 31770836), Science Foundation of Peking University Cancer Hospital 2020-14.

Conflict of Interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

1. Hohenberger P, Bonvalot S, van Coevorden F, Rutkowski P, Stoeckle E, Olungu C, Litiere S, Wardelmann E, Gronchi A, Casali P. Quality of surgery and surgical reporting for patients with primary gastrointestinal stromal tumours participating in the EORTC STBSG 62024 adjuvant imatinib study. Eur J Cancer. 2019; 120:47-53.
2. Casali PG, Zalcberg J, Cesne AL, *et al*. Ten-Year Progression-Free and Overall Survival in Patients With Unresectable or Metastatic GI Stromal Tumors: Long-Term Analysis of the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer, Italian Sarcoma Group, and Australasian Gastrointestinal Trials Group Intergroup Phase III Randomized Trial on Imatinib at Two Dose Levels. J Clin Oncol. 2017; 35:1713-1720.
3. Gronchi A, Raut CP. The combination of surgery and imatinib in GIST: a reality for localized tumors at high risk, an open issue for metastatic ones. Ann Surg Oncol. 2012; 19:1051-1055.
4. Eisenberg BL, Harris J, Blanke CD, Demetri GD, Heinrich MC, Watson JC, Hoffman JP, Okuno S, Kane JM, von Mehren M. Phase II trial of neoadjuvant/adjuvant imatinib mesylate (IM) for advanced primary and metastatic/ recurrent operable gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST): early results of RTOG 0132/ACRIN 6665. J Surg Oncol. 2009; 99:42–47.
5. H. Joensuu, A. Vehtari, J. Riihimäki, *et al*. Risk of gastrointestinal stromal tumor recurrence after surgery: an analysis of pooled population-based cohorts. Lancet Oncol. 2012; 13:265-274.
6. Racz JM, Sunil S, Abramowitz D, Brar SS, Jimenez MC, Azin A, Atenafu EG, Jackson TD, Okrainec A, Quereshy FA. Multivisceral resections for gastrointestinal stromal tumors: are the risks justifiable? Surg Oncol. 2015; 24:54-59.
7. Wong JSM, Tan GHC, Quek R, Goh BKP, Kwok LL, Kumar M, Soo KC, Teo MCC. Is multivisceral resection in locally advanced gastrointestinal stromal tumours an acceptable strategy? ANZ J Surg. 2017; 87:477-482.
8. Rutkowski P, Gronchi A, Hohenberger P, *et al*. Neoadjuvant imatinib in locally advanced gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GIST): the EORTC STBSG experience. Ann Surg Oncol. 2013; 20:2937-2943.
9. Sorour MA, Kassem MI, Ghazal Ael-H, *et al*. Gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GIST)-related emergencies. Int J Surg. 2014; 12:269-280.
10. Kosmidis CS, Alexandrou V, Koimtzis GD, Mantalovas S, Varsamis NC, Koulouris C, Taraboulous D, Leptopoulou A, Georgakoudi E, Sevva CD, Sapalidis K, Lypiridou S, Karayannopoulou G, Kesisoglou II. Treatment of a Gastrointestinal Stromal Tumor (GIST) Adherent to the Spleen and the Tail of the Pancreas: A Case Report. Am J Case Rep. 2020; 31:21.
11. DeMatteo RP, Lewis JJ, Leung D, Mudan SS, Woodruff JM, Brennan MF. Two hundred gastrointestinal stromal tumors: recurrence patterns and prognostic factors for survival. Ann Surg. 2000; 231:51-58.
12. Joensuu H, Vehtari A, Riihimäki J, *et al*. Risk of recurrence of gastrointestinal stromal tumour after surgery: an analysis of pooled population-based cohorts.

Lancet Oncol. 2012; 13:265-274.
13. Cavnar MJ, Seier K, Curtin C, Balachandran VP, Coit DG, Yoon SS, Crago AM, Strong VE, Tap WD, Gönen M, Antonescu CR, Brennan MF, Singer S, DeMatteo RP. Outcome of 1000 patients with gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST) treated by surgery in the pre- and post-imatinib eras. Ann Surg. 2021; 273:128-138.
14. Hohenberger P, Ronellenfitsch U, Oladeji O, Pink D, Ströbel P, Wardelmann E, Reichardt P. Pattern of recurrence in patients with ruptured primary gastrointestinal stromal tumour. Br J Surg. 2010; 97:18541859.
15. MacNeill AJ, Gronchi A, Miceli R, *et al.* Postoperative morbidity after radical resection of primary retroperitoneal sarcoma: A report from the transatlantic RPS working group. Ann Surg. 2018; 267:959-964
16. Fairweather M, Cavnar MJ, Li GZ, Bertagnolli MM, DeMatteo RP, Raut CP. Prediction of morbidity following cytoreductive surgery for metastatic gastrointestinal stromal tumour in patients on tyrosine kinase inhibitor therapy. Br J Surg. 2018; 105:743-750.
17. Hohenberger P, Eisenberg B. Role of surgery combined with kinase inhibition in the management of gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST). Ann Surg Oncol. 2010; 17:2585-600.
18. Qi J, Liu HL, Ren F, Liu S, Shi W, Liu WH, Cai GQ, Liao GQ. Preoperative adjuvant therapy for locally advanced and recurrent/metastatic gastrointestinal stromal tumors: a retrospective study. World J Surg Oncol. 2020; 18:70.
19. Eshmuminov D, Schneider MA, Tschuor C, Raptis DA, Kambakamba P, Muller X, Lesurtel M, Clavien PA. Systematic review and meta-analysis of postoperative pancreatic fistula rates using the updated 2016 International Study Group Pancreatic Fistula definition in patients undergoing pancreatic resection with soft and hard pancreatic texture. HPB (Oxford). 2018; 20:992-1003.
20. Ansari D, Tingstedt B, Lindell G, Keussen I, Ansari D, Andersson R. Hemorrhage after Major Pancreatic Resection: Incidence, Risk Factors, Management, and Outcome. Scand J Surg. 2017; 106:47-53.
21. Schwartz PB, Roch AM, Han JS, Vaicius AV, Lancaster WP, Kilbane EM, House MG, Zyromski NJ, Schmidt CM, Nakeeb A, Ceppa EP. Indication for en bloc pancreatectomy with colectomy: when is it safe? Surg Endosc. 2018; 32:428-435.

Received October 15, 2023; Revised December 19, 2023; Accepted December 22, 2023.

[§]These authors contributed equally to this work.

*Address correspondence to:
Chunyi Hao, Key Laboratory of Carcinogenesis and Translational Research (Ministry of Education, Beijing), Department of Hepato-Pancreato-Biliary Surgery, Peking University Cancer Hospital and Institute, #52 Fucheng Road, Haidian District, Beijing 100142, China.
E-mail: haochunyi@bjmu.edu.cn

Released online in J-STAGE as advance publication December 25, 2023.

Brief Report

DOI: 10.5582/irdr.2023.01115

Emotional journey of patients with specified intractable diseases in Japan

Hiroyuki Tanaka[1,2,*], Mikiko Shimaoka[1]

[1] Graduate School of Health Innovation, Kanagawa University of Human Services, Kawasaki City, Japan;
[2] CMIC Inizio Co., Ltd., Tokyo, Japan.

SUMMARY This study aimed to depict the emotional journey of Japanese patients with specific intractable diseases facing challenges associated with a delayed diagnosis. Specifically, our focus was on elucidating the emotional journey of patients and identifying the unmet needs caused by a delayed diagnosis. We conducted a web-based survey targeting 179 patients with 11 specified intractable diseases. They reported their emotional states during each journey phase using a 10-point scale. The results revealed that the period from noticing bodily changes to clinic visits was characterized by the most negative emotional states. Furthermore, the patients experienced a gradual shift towards positive emotional states as they decided to complete a consultation at a specialized hospital. They reached their most positive emotional states when they received a definitive diagnosis, subsequent treatment, and care. The thematic classification of emotional changes at the time of definitive diagnosis showed that "relief" was the most prevalent emotion (41.9%), followed by "no change" (19.9%), "anxiety" (14.0%), "shock" (13.4%), and "resignation" (6.5%). Additionally, when classifying the thematic changes in emotions during the period of bodily changes and clinic visits, "frustration" was the most common (51.3%), followed by "fear and anxiety" (43.6%). Patients tended to be most psychologically distressed during the period leading up to the definitive diagnosis. These results reveal that patients with intractable diseases are seeking a fast and accurate diagnosis, and that achieving these is a key unmet need for the patients.

Keywords patient journey, emotional journey, definitive diagnosis, diagnostic delay

1. Introduction

Although rare diseases individually affect a small number of patients, they collectively comprise over 7,000 conditions worldwide, affecting an estimated 350 million individuals. Patients with rare diseases face the challenges of difficult diagnoses and limited access to specialized medical expertise; together, these issues result in misdiagnoses or delayed diagnoses for many patients (*1,2*). Consequently, patients with rare diseases often face significant difficulties in their daily lives, highlighting the need to address this public health challenge (*3*).

In Japan, rare diseases are generally defined as medical conditions involving less than 50,000 patients. Rare diseases that do not meet this Ministry of Health, Labour and Welfare criterion and that have established objective diagnostic criteria are designated as "specified intractable diseases". The government recognizes these rare diseases and includes them in its medical expense subsidy programs (*4*). Despite these efforts to establish a medical support network for rare diseases and reduce the amount of time for definitive diagnosis in Japan, many patients still wait a long time before receiving a confirmed diagnosis (*5*). This matters because early diagnosis is crucial for patients with rare diseases. Even in cases in which effective treatments are lacking, early diagnosis enables the implementation of strategies to manage or slow disease progression, contributing to potential improvements in a patient's quality of life (QOL) (*6,7*).

Therefore, this study aimed to capture the emotional states of patients throughout the entire medical process – from the onset of symptoms through to diagnosis, treatment, and care. To capture the experiences and emotional changes of patients at each stage, we employed the widely used method of depicting the "patient journey". Several studies targeting patients with rare diseases have used this approach (*8,9*). However, most of these studies illustrated the experiences of a few representative patients for each disease based on non-structured interviews. Although this approach is effective for exploring diverse patient journeys and gaining deep

insights into patient experiences, it can only survey a limited number of patients. Furthermore, interviewing individual patients may also reveal strong personal emotions related to each patient's specific situation, which can make it challenging to capture the overall emotional landscape of patients with a particular disease. Few studies on rare diseases have targeted a large number of patients to capture their emotional changes and identify their unmet needs. Therefore, this study aimed not to focus on a very limited number of patients through interviews but rather to comprehensively capture emotional changes from a multitude of patients using a web-based survey method, with the goal of identifying the unmet needs of patients. We selected rare diseases based on the results of our previous research, which identified rare diseases associated with a high likelihood that patients would delay seeking medical care despite feeling abnormal symptoms and wait a long time before receiving a definitive diagnosis (*10*).

2. Materials and Methods

2.1. Study population

As noted above, our previous research in Japan targeting patients with specific intractable diseases revealed that they tended to wait a long time after the onset of abnormal symptoms to seek medical care; further, we also found that these patients tended to experience long delays (*e.g.*, over a year) in receiving a definitive diagnoses (*10*). Building on these findings, this study focused on diseases in which these observed outcomes occurred frequently.

We conducted a web-based questionnaire in November 2023 using patient panels owned by Rakuten Insight, Inc. Eleven designated intractable diseases (Crohn's disease, Sjögren's syndrome, polycystic kidney disease, IgA nephropathy, systemic lupus erythematosus, Parkinson's disease, idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy, multiple sclerosis/neuromyelitis optica, spinocerebellar degeneration (excluding multiple system atrophy), idiopathic interstitial pneumonia, and eosinophilic sinusitis) were targeted, and participants were recruited from patient panels maintained by the company. The survey methodology involved an Internet-based questionnaire. The initial sample comprised 212 respondents. After excluding cases deemed analytically unfeasible, the final sample for the analysis included 179 respondents (this was a valid final sample size).

2.2. Questionnaires

In this study, a web-based questionnaire approach was utilized instead of interviews to survey participants. This approach allows for broad participation by reaching out to a wide range of participants. Additionally, the use of a questionnaire ensures that uniformity is maintained in the wording of the questions and the scale, providing the advantage of achieving consistency in patient responses. The participants were informed about the purpose of the research, and their participation implied consent. The questionnaire asked them to state their demographic information, such as the name of the disease with which they had been diagnosed and their age, sex, marital status, and educational background. The participants selected their responses from predefined options.

The survey focused on emotional states at various stages of the medical journey, including the onset of awareness of bodily changes, emotions felt upon learning about bodily changes from health check-up results, emotions experienced from the onset of feeling bodily changes to visiting a clinic, emotional states experienced during the transition from a clinic to a specialized hospital, emotions felt during the initiation of examinations at a specialized hospital, emotional states at the time of definitive diagnosis at a specialized hospital, and emotions experienced at the commencement of treatment and care. Respondents were asked to rate these emotional states on a scale of 1–10, with 5 representing a neutral or usual emotional state. Additionally, the participants were encouraged to provide free-text descriptions of their emotions at each stage and elaborate on any changes in their emotions upon receiving a confirmed diagnosis (Supplemental Table S1, *http://www.irdrjournal.com/action/getSupplementalData.php?ID=181*).

2.3. Analysis

For the obtained 10-point emotional states, the average value was calculated and utilized as the "emotional status". Given the subjective nature of individual responses at each stage, we chose not to account for variability in the numerical values when calculating the average.

Qualitative data collected from the web survey were subjected to thematic analysis (*11*) using MAXQDA 2022, software by VERBI GmbH. This approach involves a thorough examination of the dataset to deconstruct qualitative data, reveal patterns of underlying meaning, and thereby identify comprehensive themes. Codes were assigned to themes, which were further clustered. Themes related to emotional changes upon receiving a confirmed diagnosis were categorized into "relief", "anxiety", "shock", "no change", and "other factors". Themes associated with the stage where participants reported the most negative emotions before visiting a specialized hospital were classified into "frustration", "fear and anxiety", "aversion to visiting the hospital", and "other factors". The quoted passages in the emotional journey were included to facilitate the understanding of the phenomenon.

2.4. Ethical approval

This study, conducted using a fully anonymized questionnaire survey, underwent an ethical review and was approved by the Research Ethics Review Committee of the School of Health Innovation at Kanagawa University of Human Services. The application was submitted according to prescribed procedures before the commencement of the study, and ethical approval was granted (registration number: SHI No. 35). In addition, informed consent was obtained from all of participants on the website.

3. Results and Discussion

Table 1 presents the characteristics of the participants, with the number of patients in each disease group ranging from 9 to 25. While the overall sex distribution was 62.6% male, diseases such as Sjögren's syndrome, systemic lupus erythematosus, and multiple sclerosis/optic neuromyelitis spectrum disorder were more prevalent among females.

Next, we depicted the emotional journey of patients from the onset of recognizing bodily anomalies to receiving treatment and care (Figure 1). The emotional status was 2.50 at the stage of recognizing bodily anomalies, 2.45 when visiting clinics, and 2.95 upon arrival at the specialized hospitals. Thus, the patients' emotional states during the period from recognizing bodily anomalies to visiting specialized hospitals were predominantly negative. Moreover, their emotional status gradually increased as they entered the diagnostic phase (3.23), reached a confirmed diagnosis (3.24), and began treatment and care (3.84). In sum, these results suggest that patients experience a positive shift in their emotional status upon entering the diagnostic phase at a specialized hospital, which intensifies during the definitive diagnosis and treatment phases. Notably, patients who visited specialized hospitals directly after receiving their health check results maintained an emotional status between 4.14 and 4.35, with minimal fluctuations.

Furthermore, we classified the participants' emotional responses to a definitive diagnosis into six themes: relief, anxiety, shock, no change, and other factors. The results in Figure 2 show that relief was the most prevalent theme (41.9%), followed by no change (19.9%), anxiety (14.0%), shock (13.4%), and resignation (6.5%). After a definitive diagnosis, participants experienced a mix of shock and relief, with many expressing relief at the end of their understanding of the cause of their symptoms. Interestingly, 19.9% of the participants reported no significant emotional change, positively accepted their diagnosis, and approached treatment and care from a forward-looking perspective.

Moreover, we explored specific emotions during the period when patients felt most negatively about their journeys, namely, leading up to specialized hospital visits. Responses were categorized into four themes: frustration, fear, anxiety, aversion to hospital visits, and other factors (Figure 3). Frustration was the predominant theme (51.3%), followed by fear and anxiety (43.6%). The results indicated that patients experiencing frustration were often unable to identify the cause of their symptoms even after multiple clinic visits and tests, which contributed to their negative emotional state. Additionally, the fear of deteriorating health during this process proved to be a significant contributor to negative emotions. One of the causes for the decline in the emotional state of these patients is the delay in referrals from general practitioners (GPs), who often have the opportunity to initially diagnose patients with rare diseases, to specialized hospitals. Many comments from patients indicated that GPs did not refer them to specialized hospitals without suspecting a rare disease. It became evident that addressing how to promptly refer patients from GPs to specialized hospitals is a crucial issue that needs to be resolved. These findings provide crucial insights into the unmet needs of patients with rare diseases; notably, they emphasize the importance of an early confirmed diagnosis for QOL.

In our previous study, we found that a prolonged duration before a definitive diagnosis leads to a decline in physicians' trust (*12*). A weak trust relationship may result in patients being less inclined to communicate detailed symptoms to physicians, potentially hindering a thorough understanding of their conditions. In the case of rare diseases, expediting the steps to visiting a specialized hospital before reaching a definitive diagnosis is crucial. GPs play a significant role in this work; however, GPs should build strong relationships with specialized hospitals to ensure they can efficiently diagnose rare diseases while treating multiple patients.

Further, it is essential for patients to contemplate what health information they should communicate to physicians. Notably, social media initiatives have recently emerged that enable patients with similar health issues to actively exchange opinions and find clinicians with knowledge of rare diseases (*13*). Along these lines, Yamaguchi *et al.* (*14*) explored whether social media postings of the medical history of rare disease patients may shorten the timeline for diagnosis and treatment. Such endeavors not only benefit researchers but may also motivate undiagnosed patients worldwide to seek medical attention.

This study has two strengths. First, it demonstrates the ability to depict the journey of a patient with a rare disease and capture changes in their emotional status at each stage; this approach can notably be used to identify the unmet needs of patients with rare diseases. Second, the study evidences that a web survey, which allowed for an analysis with a large sample size, is a valuable approach for capturing changes in patients' emotional statuses.

However, this study has several limitations. If it is

Table 1. Characteristics of the study sample

Characteristic	Study sample		Crohn's disease		Idiopathic interstitial pneumonia		Eosinophilic sinusitis		Sjögren's syndrome		Polycystic kidney disease		IgA nephropathy		Systemic lupus erythematosus		Parkinson's disease		Idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy		Multiple sclerosis/ neuromyelitis optica		Spinocerebellar degeneration	
	n	(%)	*n*	(%)	*n*	(%)	*n*	(%)	*n*	(%)	*n*	(%)	*n*	(%)	*n*	(%)	*n*	(%)	*n*	(%)	*n*	(%)	*n*	(%)
Total	179	(100.0)	22	(100.0)	9	(100.0)	13	(100.0)	16	(100.0)	20	(100.0)	24	(100.0)	25	(100.0)	14	(100.0)	14	(100.0)	13	(100.0)	9	(100.0)
Sex																								
Male	112	(62.6)	18	(81.8)	9	(100.0)	12	(92.3)	2	(12.5)	15	(75.0)	15	(62.5)	6	(24.0)	9	(64.3)	13	(92.9)	6	(46.2)	7	(77.8)
Female	67	(37.4)	4	(18.2)	0	(0.0)	1	(7.7)	14	(87.5)	5	(25.0)	9	(37.5)	19	(76.0)	5	(35.7)	1	(7.1)	7	(53.8)	2	(22.2)
Age																								
< 29 years	3	(1.7)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	2	(12.5)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	1	(7.7)	0	(0.0)
29–49 years	40	(22.3)	10	(45.5)	0	(0.0)	2	(15.4)	4	(25.0)	5	(25.0)	5	(20.8)	6	(24.0)	1	(7.1)	2	(14.3)	3	(23.1)	2	(22.2)
50–59 years	66	(36.9)	9	(40.9)	1	(11.1)	3	(23.1)	6	(37.5)	8	(40.0)	10	(41.7)	12	(48.0)	2	(14.3)	3	(21.4)	7	(53.8)	5	(55.6)
60–69 years	50	(27.9)	2	(9.1)	5	(55.6)	8	(61.5)	2	(12.5)	2	(10.0)	9	(37.5)	4	(16.0)	7	(50.0)	7	(50.0)	2	(15.4)	2	(22.2)
> 69 years	20	(11.2)	1	(4.5)	3	(33.3)	0	(0.0)	2	(12.5)	5	(25.0)	0	(0.0)	3	(12.0)	4	(28.6)	2	(14.3)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)
Marriage																								
Married	118	(65.9)	12	(54.5)	8	(88.9)	9	(69.2)	7	(43.8)	15	(75.0)	20	(83.3)	15	(60.0)	9	(64.3)	10	(71.4)	8	(61.5)	5	(55.6)
Other	61	(34.1)	10	(45.5)	1	(11.1)	4	(30.8)	9	(56.3)	5	(25.0)	4	(16.7)	10	(40.0)	5	(35.7)	4	(28.6)	5	(38.5)	4	(44.4)
Education Background																								
Junior school	4	(2.2)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	1	(7.7)	0	(0.0)	1	(5.0)	1	(4.2)	0	(0.0)	1	(7.1)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)
High school	46	(25.7)	5	(22.7)	0	(0.0)	6	(46.2)	5	(31.3)	4	(20.0)	4	(16.7)	10	(40.0)	2	(14.3)	6	(42.9)	4	(30.8)	0	(0.0)
Professional school	28	(15.6)	4	(18.2)	1	(11.1)	1	(7.7)	0	(0.0)	4	(20.0)	3	(12.5)	4	(16.0)	2	(14.3)	1	(7.1)	5	(38.5)	3	(33.3)
Junior college	20	(11.2)	3	(13.6)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	3	(18.8)	1	(5.0)	4	(16.7)	3	(12.0)	1	(7.1)	2	(14.3)	2	(15.4)	1	(11.1)
Bachelor's degree	68	(38.0)	7	(31.8)	7	(77.8)	5	(38.5)	6	(37.5)	9	(45.0)	7	(29.2)	8	(32.0)	8	(57.1)	4	(28.6)	2	(15.4)	5	(55.6)
Master's degree and above	12	(6.7)	3	(13.6)	1	(11.1)	0	(0.0)	1	(6.3)	1	(5.0)	5	(20.8)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	1	(7.1)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)
Other	1	(0.6)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	1	(6.3)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)	0	(0.0)
Medical visit pattern																								
Initially visited the clinic	115	(64.2)	17	(77.3)	3	(33.3)	10	(76.9)	11	(68.8)	6	(30.0)	15	(62.5)	18	(72.0)	11	(78.6)	13	(92.9)	7	(53.8)	4	(44.4)
Visited specialized hospitals from the beginning	43	(24.0)	3	(13.6)	3	(33.3)	2	(15.4)	3	(18.8)	9	(45.0)	8	(33.3)	4	(16.0)	2	(14.3)	1	(7.1)	4	(30.8)	4	(44.4)
Others	21	(11.7)	2	(9.1)	3	(33.3)	1	(7.7)	2	(12.5)	5	(25.0)	1	(4.2)	3	(12.0)	1	(7.1)	0	(0.0)	2	(15.4)	1	(11.1)

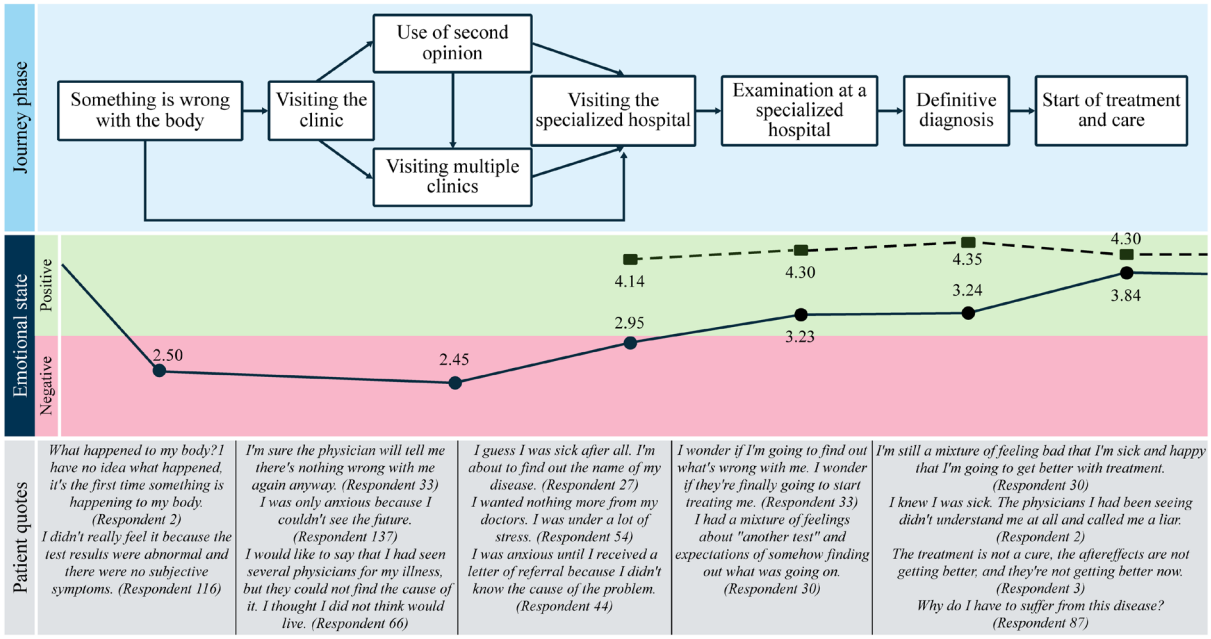


Figure 1. Emotional journey of patient with intractable disease.

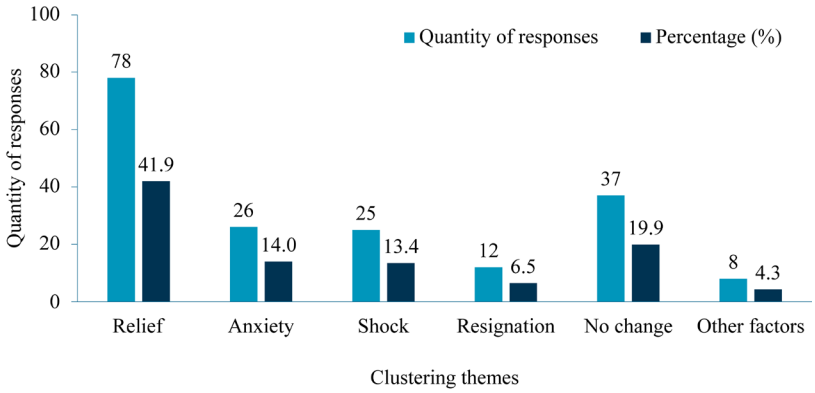


Figure 2. The emotional shift at the time of the definitive diagnosis.

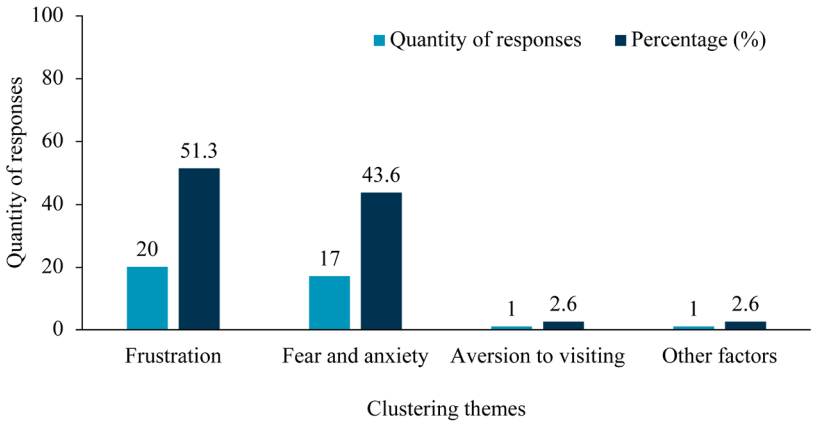


Figure 3. Clustering themes of specific emotions during the period when patients felt most negatively until they visited a specialized hospital.

anticipated that there are numerous patient journeys for each persona, thorough pre-investigation is necessary. The method of understanding the emotional states of patients through web surveys, as done in this study, may be more suitable for diseases that follow a somewhat typical medical course. In other words, this study focused on the challenges in the definitive diagnosis of specific rare diseases in Japan, and the selected disease group

allowed for some degree of prior prediction of the patient journey. In future research, it is necessary to verify the effectiveness of this survey method using a broader range of disease groups and sample sizes.

Funding: None.

Conflict of Interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

1. Austin CP, Cutillo CM, Lau LPL, *et al.* Future of rare diseases research 2017-2027: An IRDiRC perspective. Clin Transl Sci. 2018; 11:21-27.
2. Groft SC, Posada de la Paz M. Rare diseases: Joining mainstream research and treatment based on reliable epidemiological data. Adv Exp Med Biol. 2017; 1031:3-21.
3. Schieppati A, Henter JI, Daina E, Aperia A. Why rare diseases are an important medical and social issue. Lancet. 2008; 371:2039-2041.
4. Ministry of Health, Labour and Welfare. *https://www.mhlw.go.jp/stf/seisakunitsuite/bunya/0000084783.html* (accessed December 3, 2023). (in Japanese)
5. Ministry of Health, Labor and Welfare, Health Service Bureau. Intractable disease. *https://www.mhlw.go.jp/stf/seisakunitsuite/bunya/0000084783.html* (accessed December 3, 2023). (in Japanese)
6. Zurynski Y, Frith K, Leonard H, Elliott E. Rare childhood diseases: How should we respond? Arch Dis Child. 2008; 93:1071-1074.
7. Domaradzki J, Walkowiak D. Medical students' knowledge and opinions about rare diseases: A case study from Poland. Intractable Rare Dis Res. 2019; 8:252-259.
8. Larsson H, Strobel MJ, Perez-Guagnelli E. Emotional journey of patients with eosinophilic esophagitis. Adv Ther. 2023; 40:5254-5270.
9. Benson M, Albanese A, Bhatia KP, Cavillon P, Cuffe L, König K, Reinhard C, Graessner H. Development of a patient journey map for people living with cervical dystonia. Orphanet J Rare Dis. 2022; 17:130.
10. Tanaka H, Shimaoka M. Challenges associated with delayed definitive diagnosis among Japanese patients with specific intractable diseases: A cross-sectional study. Intractable Rare Dis Res. 2023; 12:213-221.
11. Nowell LS, Norris JM, White DE, Moules NJ. Thematic analysis: Striving to meet the trustworthiness criteria. Inter J Qual Methods. 2017; 16:1609406917733847.
12. Tanaka H, Shimaoka M. Trust in physicians and definitive diagnosis time among Japanese patients with specific intractable diseases: A cross-sectional study. Intractable Rare Dis Res. 2023; 12:97-103.
13. Subirats L, Reguera N, Bañón AM, Gómez-Zúñiga B, Minguillón J, Armayones M. Mining Facebook data of people with rare diseases: A content-based and temporal analysis. Int J Environ Res Public Health. 2018; 15:1877.
14. Yamaguchi A, Queralt-Rosinach N. A proof-of-concept study of extracting patient histories for rare/intractable diseases from social media. Genomics Inform. 2020; 18:e17.

Received December 18, 2023; Revised January 5, 2024; Accepted January 11, 2024.

**Address correspondence to:*
Hiroyuki Tanaka, Graduate School of Health Innovation, Kanagawa University of Human Services, Research Gate Building TONOMACHI 2-A, 3-25-10 Tonomachi, Kawasaki-ku, Kawasaki City, Kanagawa Prefecture 210-0821, Japan.
E-mail: hiroyuki.public.health@gmail.com

Released online in J-STAGE as advance publication January 13, 2024.

Brief Report

DOI: 10.5582/irdr.2023.01106

Clinical features of extrahepatic portal vein obstruction: Myeloproliferative neoplasms eliminate hypersplenic hematologic changes in extrahepatic portal vein obstruction

Tetsuya Shimizu*, Hiroshi Yoshida, Nobuhiko Taniai, Masato Yoshioka, Yoichi Kawano, Akira Matsushita, Junji Ueda, Takuma Iwai, Takahiro Murokawa, Takashi Ono, Akira Hamaguchi

Department of Gastrointestinal and Hepato-Biliary-Pancreatic Surgery, Nippon Medical School, Tokyo, Japan.

SUMMARY Extrahepatic portal vein obstruction (EHPVO) is a rare disease. Most EHPVO patients are usually referred to a gastroenterologist for intestinal bleeding and hypersplenic thrombocytopenia; however, hypercoagulative diseases may be occult in these patients and require anticoagulation. The purpose of this study was to elucidate the clinical characteristics of EHPVO. We conducted a retrospective analysis of the hospital database, evaluating the medical records of 15 patients (7 males, 8 females, mean age of onset 42.0 years, range 5–74 years). Thirteen of 15 EHPVO patients (86.7%) had intestinal varices. These included 10 esophageal (66.7%), 12 gastric (80.0%), and 6 ectopic varices (40.0%). Nine (60.0%) of 15 had a history of intestinal bleeding. Regarding comorbidities, 5 of 15 (33.3%) suffered from vascular diseases, including acute myocardial infarction, cerebral infarction, pulmonary embolism, Budd–Chiari syndrome, and mesenteric vein thrombosis. The former 3 vascular commodities manifested at less than 32 years of age. Four patients (26.7%) with JAK2V617F mutation were diagnosed as myeloproliferative neoplasm (MPN). 72.3% of EHPVO patients without MPN experienced thrombocytopenic state. No EHPVO patients with MPN experienced thrombo-leukocytopenia. The elevation of white blood cell and platelet counts, and decrease of protein S were seen in EHPVO with MPN, compared with EHPVO without MPN. EHPVO is frequently associated with underlying hypercoagulative factors, causing a dilemma between thrombotic complications and portal hypertensive bleeding. Most EHPVO patients experience an evident thrombocytopenic state due to severe hypersplenism; however, hypersplenic hematologic changes are eliminated in EHPVO with MPN. MPN should be suspected in EHPVO patients negative for thrombo-leukocytopenia.

Keywords extrahepatic portal vein obstruction, myeloproliferative neoplasm, JAK2V617F mutation

1. Introduction

Extrahepatic portal vein obstruction (EHPVO) is an important cause of non-cirrhotic portal hypertension and a rare disorder with an estimated incidence of 6.1 per 1,000,000 inhabitants in Japan (*1*). In Europe, the overall gender-specific incidence rates of EHPVO were reportedly 3.78 and 1.73 per 100,000 inhabitants, in males and females, respectively (*2*). EHPVO is the thrombotic obliteration of the extrahepatic portal vein, with or without involvement of the intrahepatic portal veins or other segments of the splanchnic venous axis. EHPVO is characterized by features of portal hypertension with portal cavernous transformation as a sequel of portal vein obstruction to compensate for the interrupted portal blood flow (*2,3*). The etiology of EHPVO is diverse: however, an association with underlying risk factors for hypercoagulation has been reported.

The majority of patients with EHPVO are usually referred to a gastroenterologist for intestinal bleeding and hypersplenic thrombocytopenia. Gastroenterologists are often faced with a dilemma between fetal intestinal hemorrhage and thrombotic complications, and forced to simultaneously provide hemostatic control for portal hypertensive bleeding and antithrombotic agent administration. This creates a series of medical care issues for every EVPVO patient, including diagnosis, diverse comorbidities, complications, and treatment. The rarity of EHPVO makes controlled studies

impractical, diagnosis difficult, and therapeutic strategies unstandardized.

This retrospective single-center study was conducted to clarify the clinical features of EHPVO and thrombotic comorbidities including hematological and vascular disease to improve diagnostic accuracy and therapeutic efficacy.

2. Patients and Methods

Between January 2000 and July 2023, 15 patients with a diagnosis of EHPVO treated in our hospital were enrolled in this retrospective study. Medical records for all 15 patients were identified and reviewed retrospectively. In all patients, the diagnosis was confirmed by imaging modalities, including ultrasonography, contrast-enhanced computed tomography, angiography, or contrast-enhanced magnetic resonance imaging. Patients with hepatocellular carcinoma, other malignancies, liver cirrhosis or operative history including pancreaticoduodenectomy and choledochotomy were excluded.

The medical records for patient age, gender, body mass index, habit (smoking, and alcohol intake), family history, symptoms at initial onset, comorbidity, laboratory workup, esophagogastroduodenoscopy findings were extracted from patient charts.

Regular blood tests, hepatic and renal function tests were performed in all patients. Thrombotic risk factors of EHPVO, including protein S, protein C, antithrombin III, D-dimer, JAK2V617F mutation, and anti-cardiolipin IgG antibodies, were tested, if needed, by the receiving doctor.

Esophagogastric varices were stratified according to the grading system proposed by the Japan Society for Portal Hypertension (*4*). Gastric varices in gastric body and antrum were included in ectopic varices. The system did not mention grading for ectopic varices; however, ectopic varices (duodenal varices and gastric body varices) were classified according to the same grading system for gastric varices (*4*) in this study.

All study participants provided informed consent and the study was carried out in accordance with the ethical standards set by the Declaration of Helsinki. This study was approved by the hospital ethics committee (B-2022-615).

The data were analyzed using IBM SPSS Statistics® Ver. 28.0.1. Discrete variables were compared using Fisher's exact test. Continuous variables were compared using the Mann-Whitney *U*-test since the sample sizes were relatively small. A p-value < 0.05 was considered significant.

3. Results and Discussion

Fifteen EHPVO patients were included in the analysis. The demographic data and clinical presentation of the EHPVO patients are presented in Table 1. Seven males (46.6%) and 8 females (53.3%); the age distribution of onset ranged from 5 years to 74 years, with a mean age of onset of 42.0 years. Body mass index (kg/m^2) was 23.4 ± 4.2 with a range from 17.6 to 34.2. Of the 15 patients, 6 (40.0%) were smokers, and 7 (46.6%) reported usual alcohol intake.

Initial complaint included 5 hematemesis (33.3%), 5 abdominal pain (33.3%), 2 asymptomatic (13.3%), 1 bloody stool (6.7%), 1 fullness in the left upper quadrant (6.7%), and 1 irregular genital bleeding (6.7%). Regarding disease-associated complications, 13 (86.7%) of 15 EHPVO patients had intestinal varices, including 10 esophageal varices (66.7%), 12 gastric varices in fundus and cardia (80.0%), and 6 ectopic varices (40.0%) with 5 duodenum and 1 gastric body. Nine (60.0%) and 11 (73.3%) of 15 had intestinal bleeding history and variceal red color sign indicating high risk for variceal rupture, respectively. Thrombocytopenia (< 20.0 × 10^4/uL), portal hypertensive gastropathy, ascites, and portal biliopathy was noted in 8 (53.3%), 4 (26.7%), 2 (13.3%), and 2 (13.3%) of 15 EHPVO patients, respectively.

Regarding comorbidities, 5 of 15 (33.3%) suffered from vascular diseases, including 1 acute myocardial infarction (6.6%), 1 cerebral infarction (6.6%), 1 pulmonary embolism (6.6%), 1 Budd-Chiari syndrome (6.6%), and 1 mesenteric vein thrombosis (6.6%). The 3 former vascular commodities manifested at less than 32 years of age. None of the 15 EHPVO patients had associated family history of thrombotic diseases. Four (26.7%) and 3 (20.0%) of 15 patients had hematological diseases of myeloproliferative neoplasm (MPN) and diabetes mellitus, respectively.

Laboratory workup for coagulation inhibitor and causative factors with EHPVO patients are shown in Table 2. Antithrombin III and protein S were deficient in 30.8% (4 of 13 tested patients) and 41.7% (5 of 12 tested patients), respectively. However, no deficiency of protein C was noted in any of the tested EHPVO patients (0.0%, 0 of 12 tested patients). Elevation of D-dimer was found in 13 of 14 tested EHPVO patients (92.9%).

Anti-cardiolipin IgG antibody for screening of antiphospholipid syndrome was negative in all 11 tested patients (0.0%). JAK2V617F mutation, indicating association with MPN, was detected in 36.3% (4 of 11 tested EHPVO patients). All 4 MPN patients diagnosed by a hematologist during EHPVO screening had JAK2V617F mutation. With further hematological scrutiny, 4 MPN patients with EHPVO were diagnosed, respectively, as 2 polycythemia vera (PV), 1 essential thrombocythemia (ET), and 1 myeloproliferative neoplasm, unclassifiable (MPN-U).

Distribution of platelet and white blood cell counts in EHPVO is noted in Figure 1. Eight of 15 EHPVO patients (53.3%) exhibited thrombocytopenia (< 20.0 × 10^4/uL). Eight of 11 EHPVO patients without MPN (72.3%) exhibited a thrombocytopenic state; however,

Table 1. Demographic data and clinical presentation for EHPVO patients

Characteristic	All patients (n = 15)		
Gender			
Male, n (%)	7	(46.6%)	
Female, n (%)	8	(53.3%)	
Age of onset			
mean ± SD (range)	42.0 ± 18.1	(5–74)	
Body mass index (Kg/m^2)			
mean ± SD (range)	23.4 ± 4.2	(17.6–34.2)	
Initial complaint			
hematemesis	5	(33.3%)	
abdominal pain	5	(33.3%)	
none	2	(13.3%)	
bloody stool	1	(6.7%)	
fullness in the left upper quadrant	1	(6.7%)	
irregular genital bleeding	1	(6.7%)	
Disease-associated complications			
upper gastrointestinal varices	13	(86.7%)	
esophageal varices	10	(66.7%)	
gastric varices	12	(80.0%)	
ectopic varices	6	(40.0%)	5 duodenum, 1 gastric body
history of intestinal bleeding	9	(60.0%)	
thrombocytopenia (< 2.0 × 10^4/uL)	8	(53.3%)	
portal hypertensive gastropathy	4	(26.7%)	
ascites	2	(13.3%)	
portal biliopathy	2	(13.3%)	
Comorbidities			
vascular disease	5	(33.3%)	AMI 1, CI 1, PE 1 , BCS 1, mesenteric vein thrombosis 1 (6.6%)
hematological disease	4	(26.7%)	MPN 4 (26.7%)
diabetes mellitus	3	(20.0%)	

AMI: acute myocardial infarction, BCS: Budd-Chiari Syndrome, CI: cerebral infarction, EHPVO: extrahepatic portal vein obstruction, MPN: myeloproliferative neoplasm, PE: pulmonary embolism.

Table 2. Coagulation inhibitor and causative factors (APS and MPN) for EHPVO patients

Variable	unit (reference range)	Patients tested positive (%)		(range)
Antithrombin III deficiency	% (80-120)	4/13 (30.8%)	89.2 ± 12.9	(65.9-109.0)
Protein S deficiency	% (64-149)	5/12 (41.7%)	77.5 ± 23.2	(46.4-117.0)
Protein C deficiency	% (64-146)	0/12 (0.0%)	90.3 ± 26.2	(64.0-142.0)
D-dimer	ug/mL (<0.5)	13/14 (92.9%)	1.0 ± 0.6	(0.4-2.6)
anti-cardiolipin IgG antibody	U/mL (<10)	0/11 (0.0%)	4.1 ± 1.5	(0-6)
JAK2V617F mutation	(negative)	4 /11 (36.3%)		

APS: antiphospholipid syndrome, EHPVO: extrahepatic portal vein obstruction, JAK: Janus kinase, MPN: myeloproliferative neoplasm.

none of the 4 patients with MPN exhibited thrombo-leukocytopenia. All 4 MPN patients had high counts for both platelets (> 25.5 × 10^4/uL) and white blood cells (> 8.1 × 10^3/uL).

As shown in Table 3, white blood cells and platelets were diminished in EHPVO patients without MPN; however, they were significantly elevated in EHPVO patients with MPN. Furthermore, protein S in EHPVO patients with MPN was significantly lower than in patients without MPN. However, Antithrombin III, Protein C, and D-dimer were not statistically significant between the EHPVO patients with or without MPN. The comparison regarding gender, age at initial symptom, red blood cell counts, history of vascular disease and intestinal bleeding revealed no differences between the EHPVO patients with or without MPN.

In 2 of 4 EHPVO patients with MPN, Hassab's

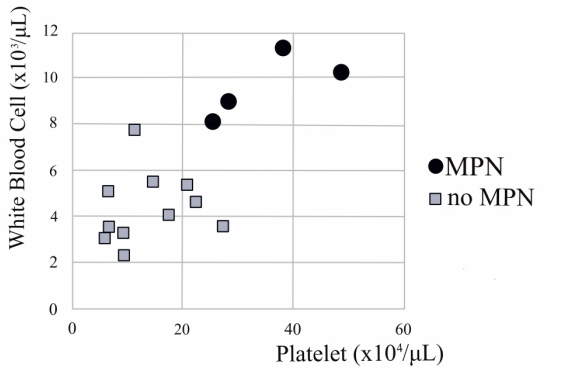


Figure 1. Distribution of platelet and white blood cell counts in EHPVO patients with MPN. Eight of 11 EHPVO patients without MPN (72.3%) exhibited a thrombocytopenic state; however, none of the 4 patients with MPN exhibited thrombo-leukocytopenia. All 4 MPN patients had high counts for both platelets (> 25.5 × 10^4/uL) and white blood cells (> 8.1 × 10^3/uL).

Table 3. Comparison of clinical character of EHPVO patients with or without MPN

Variable	MPN (n = 4)	without MPN (n = 11)	p
Gender (Male/Female)	1/3	6/5	NS
Age at initial symptom			
mean ± SD	54.3 ± 10.0	37.2 ± 18.9	NS
(range)	(42–66)	(5–74)	
BMI kg/m2			
mean ± SD	20.6 ± 1.7	24.6 ± 4.4	NS
WBC ($\times 10^3/\mu L$)			
mean ± SD	9.7 ± 1.2	4.4 ± 1.6	< 0.05
RBC ($\times 10^6/\mu L$)			
mean ± SD	4.4 ± 1.4	4.6 ± 0.4	NS
Platelet ($\times 10^4/\mu L$)			
mean ± SD	35.2 ± 9.2	13.6 ± 7.0	< 0.05
Antithrombin III % (80–120)			
mean ± SD	88.7 ± 10.9	89.4 ± 13.8	NS
Protein S % (64–149)			
mean ± SD	52.9 ± 5.7	89.8 ± 18.4	< 0.05
Protein C % (64–146)			
mean ± SD	84.5 ± 12.1	93.3 ± 30.5	NS
D-dimer ug/mL (< 0.5)			
mean ± SD	1.20 ± 0.55	0.98 ± 0.63	NS
history of vascular disease (yes/no)	1/3	4/7	NS
history of intestinal bleeding (yes/no)	3/1	6/5	NS

BMI: body mass index, EHPVO: extrahepatic portal vein obstruction, MPN: myeloproliferative neoplasm, RBC: red blood cell, WBC: white blood cell.

operation was performed for eradication of esophagogastric varices. Hassab's operation includes splenectomy with devascularization of the upper half of the stomach and distal esophagus. These two patients with MPN caused marked postoperative thrombocytosis of 195 × 10^4 /uL and 222 × 10^4 /uL (*5*), respectively. The increasing platelet counts were thought to be induced by asplenia after splenectomy because hypersplenism preoperatively masked marked thrombocytosis by MPN. The postoperative thrombocytosis due to MPN was treated by administration of cytoreduction therapy by a hematologist.

Various complications due to portal hypertension, including gastropathy, colopathy, biliopathy, intractable ascites, and liver dysfunction, have been reported in adult EHPVO patients (*6*). The rarity and diverse complications of EHPVO make diagnosis difficult and therapeutic strategies diverse.

Nutritional evaluation in our cases revealed that body mass index was within normal limits at 23.4 kg/m^2 with EHPVO. This result is consistent with other reports indicating favorable prognosis in adult patients with appropriate treatment (*7*). Conversely, EHPVO in childhood resulted in retardation of growth in around 50% of pediatric patients, possibly due to reduced portal supply to the liver, resistance to growth hormone and reduced insulin-like growth factor (*6,8*).

EHPVO patients are reported to have a favorable prognosis with a survival rate of 69-86% at 10 years if these portal hypertensive complications are appropriately managed (*7,9-11*). The fatal presentations in chronic EHPVO patients are mainly variceal bleeding and hypersplenism. Considering the frequency and severity of the various portal hypertensive complications, prophylaxis and treatment for esophagogastric variceal bleeding are of particular importance. EHPVO patients with esophagogastric varices show a favorable prognosis if variceal prophylaxis is performed appropriately (*7*). In our study, the proportion of subjects with a history of variceal bleeding with EHPVO was 60% and, likewise, the rate of variceal red color sign was 73.3%, indicating the importance of primary or secondary prophylaxis for variceal bleeding. Furthermore, anti-thrombotic therapy for EHPVO should be administered for portal thrombotic prophylaxis. Long-term anticoagulant therapy also should be administered in EHPVO patients with underlying persistent hypercoagulation (*3,12*). Simultaneous administration for hemorrhagic and thrombotic events complicated treatment for EHPVO by gastroenterologists.

Ectopic varices further complicate the strategy for EHPVO. While ectopic varices account for 1% to 5% of all variceal bleeding in patients with intrahepatic portal hypertension, they account for 20% to 30% of those with EHPVO. In brief, ectopic varices were generally a rare manifestation, but they were a common complication among EHPVO patients (*13,14*). The most difficult aspect is treatment of the ectopic varices due to the lack of standard guidelines because of their rarity. The treatment strategy for hemorrhagic ectopic varices varies by case based on the portal hemodynamics and the site of ectopic varices.

While it is reported that the major causative disease can be detected in the majority of patients with

EHPVO, including MPN, antiphospholipid syndrome, abnormal angiogenesis, and paroxysmal nocturnal hemoglobinuria, none of the risk factors could be identified in a third of patients with EHPVO (*15*). Among these causative diseases, MPN, including chronic idiopathic myelofibrosis, polycythemia vera, essential thrombocythemia, and unclassifiable type (MPN-U), is the most frequent underlying prothrombotic factor for EHPVO with a reported prevalence of 15–30% (*12,16-20*). In the West, MPN has been reported in 58% of patients with EHPVO of unknown etiology, and 57% of these go on to develop an overt MPN during follow up (*20*).

EHPVO in adults is frequently associated with underlying risk factors for hypercoagulation, and the probability of hypercoagulable condition should be considered and screened for (*3,21*). Protein C, Protein S, and antithrombin III deficiencies are associated with the etiology of EHPVO, and detected in 3.9–20.6%, 2–11.8%, and 0–4.1% of EHPVO cases, respectively (*15,22-24*). In this study, Protein S was significantly decreased with EHPBO with MPN. The cause of the reduced levels of Protein S in patients with MPN is unknown; however, the mechanism may be related to the ongoing hypercoagulative condition by MPN that causes the consumption of Protein S.

A close relationship between EHPVO and MPN was also confirmed by the high frequency of a clonal mutation of JAK2V617F, which was present in 16-35% of EHPVO patients (*16,23,25*). Screening for JAK2V617F mutation offers a diagnostic tool for the detection of occult MPN in EHPVO patients (*16,23,26*). JAK2 tyrosine kinase causes cytokine-independent activation of the JAK–STAT pathway, resulting in proliferation of mature myeloid cells (*27*). The JAK2V617F gain-of-function mutation increasing the risk of thrombosis is present in up to 95% of patients with polycythemia vera and in about 50% of patients with essential thrombocythemia and myelofibrosis (*16,28,29*). Furthermore, MPN often sequentially progresses to a fatal condition with an end-stage myelofibrosis or acute myeloid leukemia. These data also suggest the value of screening for JAK2V617F mutation in noninvasive blood sample in EHPVO patients. Patients with splanchnic vein thrombosis, including EHPVO and Budd-Chiari syndrome in adults, show a considerable overlap in etiology; therefore, the JAK2V617F mutation also should be screened for in patients with Budd-Chiari syndrome (*16*).

The present study demonstrated the significant elevation of white blood cells and platelets, and the decrease of protein S in EHPVO with MPN compared to EHPVO without MPN. This hematological difference is very important in understanding the condition of EHPVO with MPN. In particular, we would like to emphasize the importance of platelet counts in EHPVO patients with MPN. The majority of patients with portal hypertension, including EHPVO patients, are usually in an evident thrombocytopenic state due to severe hypersplenism and are, therefore, referred to gastroenterologists (*30*); however, EHPVO patients with MPN have a normal or high platelet count caused by stem cell-derived clonal myeloproliferation despite hypersplenism. The actual high platelet count is effectively masked by hypersplenism to show a normal range, making it difficult for general gastroenterologists to properly understand the underlying state of MPN with hypercoagulation.

Although further research on a large series is required to accumulate more detailed data of EHPVO, our results will encourage gastroenterologists to consider MPN in EHPVO patients.

In conclusion, EHPVO is frequently associated with underlying risk factors for hypercoagulation, causing a dilemma between fatal portal hypertensive bleeding and thrombotic complications. EHPVO patients are usually in an evident thrombocytopenic state due to severe hypersplenism; however, hypersplenic hematologic changes are eliminated in EHPVO patients with MPN. MPN should be strongly suspected in EHPVO patients without thrombo-leukocytopenia.

Funding: None.

Conflict of Interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

1. Ohfuji S, Furuichi Y, Akahoshi T, Kage M, Obara K, Hashizume M, Matsuura T, Fukushima W, Nakamura Y. Japanese periodical nationwide epidemiologic survey of aberrant portal hemodynamics. Hepatol Res. 2019; 49:890-901.
2. Ageno W, Dentali F, Pomero F, Fenoglio L, Squizzato A, Pagani G, Re R, Bonzini M. Incidence rates and case fatality rates of portal vein thrombosis and Budd-Chiari Syndrome. Thromb Haemost. 2017; 117:794-800.
3. de Franchis R, Faculty BV. Expanding consensus in portal hypertension: Report of the Baveno VI Consensus Workshop: Stratifying risk and individualizing care for portal hypertension. J Hepatol. 2015; 63:743-52.
4. Tajiri T, Yoshida H, Obara K, *et al*. General rules for recording endoscopic findings of esophagogastric varices (2nd edition). Dig Endosc. 2010; 22:1-9.
5. Shimizu T, Yoshioka M, Matsushita A, Ueda J, Kawashima M, Ono T, Kawano Y, Yoshida H. Esophagogastric varix caused by extrahepatic portal vein obstruction with essential thrombocythemia: A case report. J Nippon Med Sch. 2023. doi: 10.1272/jnms.JNMS.2024_91-601. Epub ahead of print.
6. Sarin SK, Sollano JD, Chawla YK, Amarapurkar D, Hamid S, Hashizume M, Jafri W, Kumar A, Kudo M, Lesmana LA, Sharma BC, Shiha G, Janaka de Silva H; Members of the APASL Working Party on Portal Hypertension. Consensus on extra-hepatic portal vein obstruction. Liver Int. 2006; 26:512-519.
7. Sekimoto T, Maruyama H, Kobayashi K, Kiyono S, Kondo T, Shimada T, Takahashi M, Yokosuka O. Well-

tolerated portal hypertension and favorable prognosis in adult patients with extrahepatic portal vein obstruction in Japan. Hepatol Res. 2016; 46:505-513.
8. Sarin SK, Bansal A, Sasan S, Nigam A. Portal-vein obstruction in children leads to growth retardation. Hepatology. 1992; 15:229-233.
9. Bhargava DK, Dasarathy S, Sundaram KR, Ahuja RK. Efficacy of endoscopic sclerotherapy on long-term management of oesophageal varices: A comparative study of results in patients with cirrhosis of the liver, non-cirrhotic portal fibrosis (NCPF) and extrahepatic portal venous obstruction (EHO). J Gastroenterol Hepatol. 1991; 6:471-475.
10. Kitano S, Iso Y, Iwanaga T, Koyanagi N, Sugimachi K. Esophageal transection may well be the approach of choice for patient with portal venous obstruction and esophageal varices. Jpn J Surg. 1989; 19:418-423.
11. Pande GK, Reddy VM, Kar P, Sahni P, Berry M, Tandon BN, Nundy S. Operations for portal hypertension due to extrahepatic obstruction: results and 10 year follow up. Br Med J (Clin Res Ed). 1987; 295:1115-1117.
12. Plessier A, Darwish-Murad S, Hernandez-Guerra M, *et al.* Acute portal vein thrombosis unrelated to cirrhosis: A prospective multicenter follow-up study. Hepatology. 2010; 51:210-218.
13. Sharma B, Raina S, Sharma R. Bleeding ectopic varices as the first manifestation of portal hypertension. Case Reports Hepatol. 2014; 2014:140959.
14. Sarin SK, Kumar CKN. Ectopic varices. Clin Liver Dis (Hoboken). 2012; 1:167-172.
15. Amarapurkar P, Bhatt N, Patel N, Amarapurkar D. Primary extrahepatic portal vein obstruction in adults: A single center experience. Indian J Gastroenterol. 2014; 33:19-22.
16. Smalberg JH, Arends LR, Valla DC, Kiladjian JJ, Janssen HL, Leebeek FW. Myeloproliferative neoplasms in Budd-Chiari syndrome and portal vein thrombosis: a meta-analysis. Blood. 2012; 120:4921-4928.
17. Denninger MH, Chaït Y, Casadevall N, Hillaire S, Guillin MC, Bezeaud A, Erlinger S, Briere J, Valla D. Cause of portal or hepatic venous thrombosis in adults: the role of multiple concurrent factors. Hepatology. 2000; 31:587-591.
18. Janssen HL, Wijnhoud A, Haagsma EB, van Uum SH, van Nieuwkerk CM, Adang RP, Chamuleau RA, van Hattum J, Vleggaar FP, Hansen BE, Rosendaal FR, van Hoek B. Extrahepatic portal vein thrombosis: Aetiology and determinants of survival. Gut. 2001; 49:720-724.
19. Bayraktar Y, Harmanci O, Büyükasik Y, Shorbagi AI, Sungur AH, Boylu CA, Gürgey A, Balkanci F. JAK2V617F mutation in patients with portal vein thrombosis. Dig Dis Sci. 2008; 53:2778-2783.
20. Valla D, Casadevall N, Huisse MG, Tulliez M, Grange JD, Muller O, Binda T, Varet B, Rueff B, Benhamou JP. Etiology of portal vein thrombosis in adults. A prospective evaluation of primary myeloproliferative disorders. Gastroenterology. 1988; 94:1063-1069.
21. Chait Y, Condat B, Cazals-Hatem D, Rufat P, Atmani S, Chaoui D, Guilmin F, Kiladjian JJ, Plessier A, Denninger MH, Casadevall N, Valla D, Brière JB. Relevance of the criteria commonly used to diagnose myeloproliferative disorder in patients with splanchnic vein thrombosis. Br J Haematol. 2005; 129:553-560.
22. Khanna R, Sarin SK. Idiopathic portal hypertension and extrahepatic portal venous obstruction. Hepatol Int. 2018; 12(Suppl 1):148-167.
23. Primignani M, Barosi G, Bergamaschi G, Gianelli U, Fabris F, Reati R, Dell'Era A, Bucciarelli P, Mannucci PM. Role of the JAK2 mutation in the diagnosis of chronic myeloproliferative disorders in splanchnic vein thrombosis. Hepatology. 2006; 44:1528-1534.
24. Mutreja D, Kotru M, Sazawal S, Ranjan R, Sharma A, Acharya SK, Saxena R. Hereditary and acquired thrombophilia in splanchnic vein thrombosis: A single-center experience. Clin Appl Thromb Hemost. 2015; 21:521-526.
25. Hernández-Gea V, De Gottardi A, Leebeek FWG, Rautou PE, Salem R, Garcia-Pagan JC. Current knowledge in pathophysiology and management of Budd-Chiari syndrome and non-cirrhotic non-tumoral splanchnic vein thrombosis. J Hepatol. 2019; 71:175-199.
26. De Stefano V, Vannucchi AM, Ruggeri M, *et al.* Splanchnic vein thrombosis in myeloproliferative neoplasms: risk factors for recurrences in a cohort of 181 patients. Blood Cancer J. 2016; 6:e493.
27. James C, Ugo V, Le Couédic JP, Staerk J, Delhommeau F, Lacout C, Garçon L, Raslova H, Berger R, Bennaceur-Griscelli A, Villeval JL, Constantinescu SN, Casadevall N, Vainchenker W. A unique clonal JAK2 mutation leading to constitutive signalling causes polycythaemia vera. Nature. 2005; 434:1144-1148.
28. Baxter EJ, Scott LM, Campbell PJ, East C, Fourouclas N, Swanton S, Vassiliou GS, Bench AJ, Boyd EM, Curtin N, Scott MA, Erber WN, Green AR; Cancer Genome Project. Acquired mutation of the tyrosine kinase JAK2 in human myeloproliferative disorders. Lancet. 2005; 365:1054-1061.
29. Nielsen C, Birgens HS, Nordestgaard BG, Kjaer L, Bojesen SE. The JAK2 V617F somatic mutation, mortality and cancer risk in the general population. Haematologica. 2011; 96:450-453.
30. Yoshida H, Shimizu T, Yoshioka M, Taniai N. Management of portal hypertension based on portal hemodynamics. Hepatol Res. 2021; 51:251-262.

Received November 19, 2023; Revised January 10, 2024; Accepted January 12, 2024.

**Address correspondence to:*
Tetsuya Shimizu, Department of Gastrointestinal and Hepato-Biliary-Pancreatic Surgery, Nippon Medical School, 1-1-5 Sendagi, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 113-8603, Japan.
E-mail: tetsuya@nms.ac.jp

Released online in J-STAGE as advance publication January 17, 2024.

Correspondence

DOI: 10.5582/irdr.2023.01102

Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome: A new synonym mutation in the WAS gene

Yuxin Sun[1,§], Xiaomin Song[2,§], Hua Pan[3], Xiaoxuan Li[4], Lirong Sun[5], Liang Song[6], Fei Ma[1], Junnan Hao[6,*]

[1] Department of Oncology, Xinhua Hospital Affiliated to Shanghai Jiao Tong University School of Medicine, Shanghai, China;
[2] School of Basic Medicine, Qingdao University, Qingdao, China;
[3] Department of Pediatric Intensive Care Unit, Affiliated Hospital of Qingdao University, Qingdao, China;
[4] Department of Oncology, Key Laboratory of Cancer Molecular and Translational Research, The Affiliated Hospital of Qingdao University, Qingdao, China;
[5] Department of Pediatric Hematology, Affiliated Hospital of Qingdao University, Qingdao, China;
[6] Department of Emergency Paediatrics, Affiliated Hospital of Qingdao University, Qingdao, China.

SUMMARY Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome (WAS) is a rare X-linked recessive primary immunodeficiency disorder. Mutations in the WAS gene are considered to be the primary cause of WAS. In this work, we report a boy who presented with intracranial hemorrhage (ICH) as an initial symptom and detects a novel pathogenic synonymous mutation in his *WAS* gene. His mother was a carrier of the mutant gene. The mutation, located at position c.273 (c.273 G>A) in exon 2, is a synonym mutation and predicted to affect protein expression by disrupting gene splicing. This study summarizes the diagnosis and treatment process of the patient and expands the genetic spectrum of WAS.

Keywords Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, synonymous mutation, newborn, hematopoietic stem cell transplantation, intracranial hemorrhage

Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome (WAS) is a rare X-linked recessive disorder which is characterized by thrombocytopenia, microplatelets, eczema, recurrent infections, and an increased risk of autoimmunity and malignance (*1,2*). This disease results from mutations in the *WAS* gene which is located on the short arm of the X chromosome (Xp11.22-p11.23) and contains 12 exons. A wide range of mutations in the *WAS* gene cause WAS protein (WASp) deficiency, leading to immune function defects (*3*). Depending on the type of WAS gene mutation, WAS can ultimately manifest as multiple clinical phenotypes, including classical WAS, X-linked thrombocytopenia (XLT), intermittent X-linked thrombocytopenia (IXLT), and X-linked neutropenia (XLN) (*4,5*).

Intracranial hemorrhage (ICH) is an important cause of neonatal morbidity and mortality (*6*). IHC can be particularly harmful in the neonatal period as this is a critical stage for brain development (*7,8*). Reported cases of WAS that start with ICH are rare. Here, a neonatal patient diagnosed as WAS with a novel gene mutation developed ICH and eventually died of ICH. The aim of this study was to enhance clinical practitioners' awareness of the rare disease onset in WAS patients and to further our understanding of the pathogenesis of WAS. This study was approved by the Ethics Committee of the Affiliated Hospital of Qingdao University School of Medicine. The informed consent has been obtained from the patient's guardian.

A 14-day-old neonatal boy was the first and only child of a Han nationality parents with full-term normal delivery. His mother had a history of thrombocytopenia during the pregnancy. Initially, he was admitted to other hospital because of intracranial hemorrhage, thrombocytopenia, anemia and prolonged activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT). After the surgical removal of intracranial hematoma was used to clear intracranial hematoma, he was transferred to our hospital with eczema. Physical examination showed that the newborn did not have hepatosplenomegaly and lymphadenopathy but had significant eczema on the face and chest. Some rash had ruptured and been infected just looked like the impetigo. The result of hematological examination revealed that the platelet count (PLT, 45.00 $\times 10^9$/L) and plateletcrit (0.04%) were significantly decreased and mean platelet volume (MPV, 7.20 fL) level was at the lower limit of normal complicated with mild anemia (Hb91g/L). Coagulation functions were normal.

Serum IgA, IgM levels were normal except for obvious increased IgE (1,110 IU/mL) and moderately increased IgG (17.50g/L). The percentages of peripheral blood lymphocyte subsets were as follows: CD3+ 66.97%, CD3+CD4+ 60.49%, CD3+CD8+ 5.90%, CD4+/CD8+ 10.25, CD3−CD16+CD56+ 25.79%, and CD3−CD19+ 2.62%. Antinuclear antibodies (ANA) were positive with cytoplasmic (granular) pattern at a 1/100 titer. Antibodies to extractable nuclear antigens (ENA) and complement C3 were negative. Bone marrow biopsy was found to be normal. Evidence of EB virus or CMV virus infection were not found. The case did not find obvious infection except for the impetigo herpetiformis that were cured by systemic antibiotic. The patient was put on intravenous immunoglobulin (IVIG) at the total dose of 2.32 g/kg and the platelet count increased to 61.00 × 10^9/L. Having atypical thrombocytopenia and eczema in a male infant suggested the initial diagnosis of WAS. Then the WAS gene testing confirmed our diagnosis. One month later, the child was re-admitted to the hospital because of thrombocytopenia (PLT25 × 10^9/L). Following IVIG infusion at the dose of 200mg/kg, the child's platelet count raised to 85.00×10^9/L and he was discharged home. Later on, he did not have regular follow-up and eventually died of ICH at the age of 1 year.

As for WAS gene test, DNA extracted from blood samples of the patient were analyzed using next-generation sequencing technologies. The results showed that the patient carries a new hemizygous mutation in the *WAS* gene (Figure 1, b). A G-to-A substitution at position c273 in exon 2 of the *WAS* gene resulted in the mutation (c.273 G>A) (Figure 1, a). This is a silent mutation induced by a base substitution that has no effect on the amino acid it encodes. Meanwhile, Sanger sequencing of the *WAS* genes of the child's parents showed that his mother had a heterozygous mutation in her X chromosome, a G-to-A substitution at position c273 in exon 2 of the *WAS* gene. His father and maternal grandmother revealed wild-type gene sequencing. Therefore, we deduced that the patient's *WAS* C.273 G>A was passed down from her mother, who was an asymptomatic carrier of the mutant gene (Figure 1, c).

The newly discovered mutation did not result in amino acid substitution due to the codon's degeneracy. To explore whether this gene mutation was deleterious, we used online prediction software for preliminary investigation. In Combined Annotation Dependent Depletion (CADD) testing, the mutation site had a RawScore of 3.430166 and a Phred score of 24.8 (Figure 2, b). Both the Spidex and Mutation Taster software prediction results showed that the mutation would result in a splicing change, which would affect the transcript (Figure 2, a).

To further confirm this prediction, we carried out transcriptome sequencing on the patient's and his parents' genes. The results indicated the alteration of the *WAS* gene transcript (Figure 2, c). A novel transcript called ONT.4932.1 was highly expressed in the patient's and his mother's genomes compared to the normal population. WAS-201 was the most highly expressed transcript in the normal population, but it was expressed at a relatively low level in patients. According to the sequence variant interpretation guidelines established by the American College of Medical Genetics and Genomics (ACMG), combined with the clinical manifestations of the child, this variant can be assessed as "pathogenic".

WAS is a rare X-linked recessive disease which threatens the survival and growth of children. Until now, more than 400 different types and sites of mutations in the *WAS* gene have been identified (*9*). The most common type of mutation is missense mutations clustered mainly in exons 1-4, followed by splicing mutations which mainly occur in exons 6-10. The deletion and insertion mutations are relatively rare which

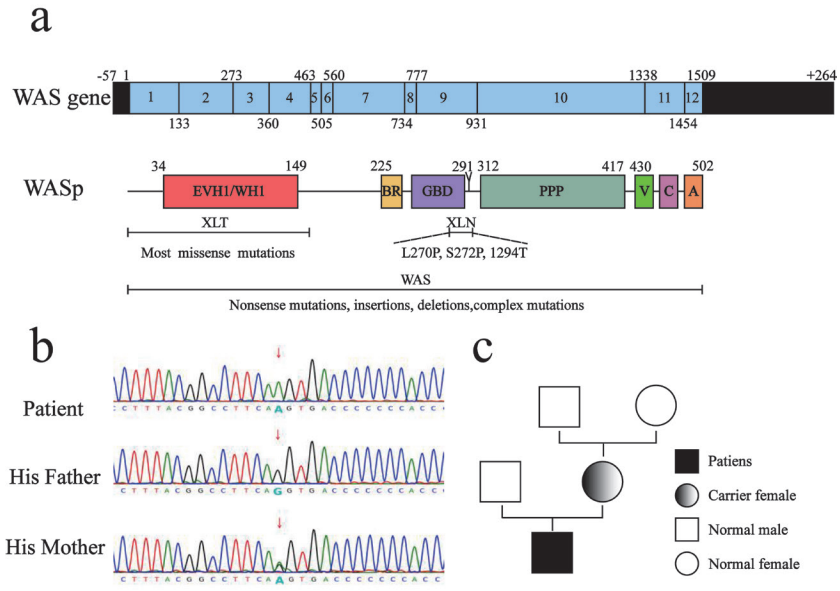
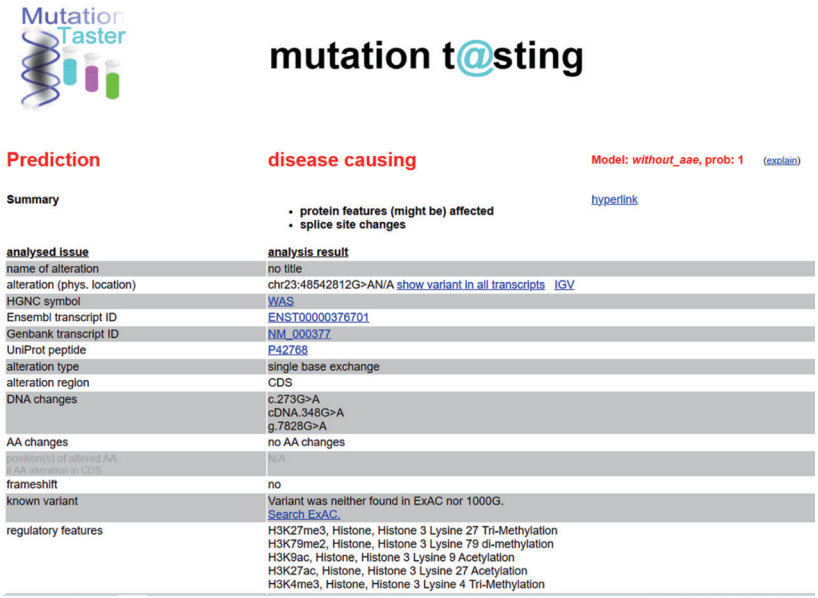


Figure 1. (a) Schematic diagram of the WAS gene and WASp structure. *WAS* gene contains 12 exons and *WAS* c.273 G>A (in patient) occurred on exon 2. WASp consists of five functional domains, namely Ena-VASP Homologous 1 domain (EVH1), base domain (B), guanosine triphosphatase-binding domain (GBD), proline-rich domain (PRD), and verprolin homologous/central hydrophobic C/ acidic domain A domain (VCA). The domain encoded by exon 2 is EVH1. **(b) Sanger sequencing of *WAS* gene in c.273 G>A. (c) Genetic family map of this WAS patient.**

a



b

Chrom	X
Pos	48542812
Ref	G
Alt	A
RawScore	3.430116
PHRED	24.8

c

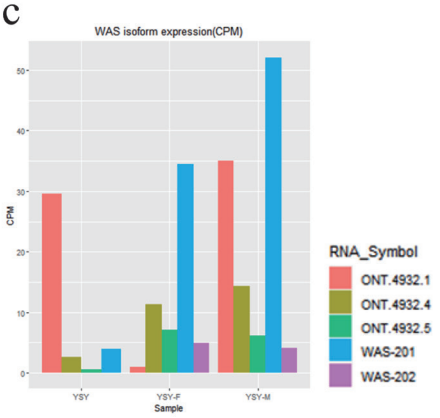


Figure 2. (a) The results of Mutation Taster. (b) The results of CADD testing. (c) The results of transcriptome sequencing.

are distributed in the entire WAS gene (*10,11*). The present study identified a novel synonymous mutation (c.273 G>A), which has not been reported in the HGMD and Clinvar database as a known variant in the general population.

In the process of exploring the pathogenicity of this mutation, next-generation sequencing, SPIDEX and Mutation Taster software as well as transcriptome sequencing were used. At the same time, we traced the origin of the mutation and found that his mother was a carrier of the mutant gene. Therefore, the mutation was considered to be "pathogenic", combined with the child's symptoms and family history. Nonsense mutations had previously been reported at this locus (c273 G>C), but the substituted bases and pathogenicity are different from those in this study (*12*). This finding has important implications for understanding the pathogenicity of mutations in the *WAS* gene and expands the genetic spectrum of WAS.

The treatment depends on the main symptoms, severity and the expected prognosis of WAS (*13*). Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation (HSCT) is currently recognized as the only potentially curative strategy that provides lifelong benefits for typical WAS patients (*14*). As a typical WAS patient, after receiving supportive treatments including antibiotics, immunoglobulins, and platelet transfusion, the clinical symptoms of the patient were temporarily controlled, and humoral immune status was improved. However, the patient eventually died due to recurrent episodes and the lack of curative hematopoietic stem cell transplantation.

Gene therapy for WAS has been rapidly developed in recent years and its therapeutic effect has been widely recognize (*15,16*). Gene therapy involves gene editing of autologous hematopoietic stem cells and reinfusion, which avoids the risks of allogeneic transplantation and effectively overcomes the realistic obstacles of bone marrow matching (*17,18*). With the advancement of treatment methods, the overall survival rate and prognosis of WAS patients has increased. The child might benefit from gene therapy, but don't have the time to receive this therapy and eventually died. Therefore, the effect of gene therapy on WAS caused by this mutation remains to be verified.

In conclusion, the synonymous mutation (c.273 G>C) of exon 2 in the *WAS* gene is pathogenic. Genetic testing

and family history tracing should be done as soon as possible on patients with suspected WAS. In this study, the patient presented with ICH as the first symptom, which is uncommon in patients with WAS. Therefore, infants with ICH as the initial presentation should alert clinicians to the possibility of WAS. Once the diagnosis is established, symptomatic treatment should be combined with early HSCT to improve the prognosis of the patient.

Acknowledgements

We thank Yuren 930 club in Qingdao University of medicine for allowing the authors to collaborate on this study.

Funding: This work was supported by the National Natural Science Foundation of China (grant no.81802337), Shanghai Jiao Tong University (grant no. YG2017MS74), and the Shanghai Health Committee (grant no. 202040447).

Conflict of Interest: The authors have no conflicts of interest to disclose.

References

1. Candotti F. Clinical Manifestations and pathophysiological mechanisms of the Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. J Clin Immunol. 2018; 38:13-27.
2. Derry JM, Ochs HD, Francke U. Isolation of a novel gene mutated in Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. Cell. 1994; 79:following 922.
3. Vieira RC, Pinho LG, Westerberg LS. Understanding immunoactinopathies: A decade of research on WAS gene defects. Pediatr Allergy Immunol. 2023; 34:e13951.
4. Sullivan KE, Mullen CA, Blaese RM, Winkelstein JA. A multiinstitutional survey of the Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. J Pediatr. 1994; 125:876-885.
5. Bosticardo M, Marangoni F, Aiuti A, Villa A, Grazia Roncarolo M. Recent advances in understanding the pathophysiology of Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. Blood. 2009; 113:6288-6295.
6. Sinn H, Lewis N, *et al*. Intracranial haemorrhage in the newborn. Med J Aust. 1946; 2:102.
7. Haller ES, Nesbitt RE Jr, Anderson GW. Clinical and pathologic concepts of gross intracranial hemorrhage in perinatal mortality. Obstet Gynecol Surv. 1956; 11:179-204.
8. Stanworth SJ, Mumford AD. How I diagnose and treat neonatal thrombocytopenia. Blood. 2023; 141:2685-2697.
9. Zhu Q, Zhang M, Blaese RM, Derry JM, Junker A, Francke U, Chen SH, Ochs HD. The Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome and X-linked congenital thrombocytopenia are caused by mutations of the same gene. Blood. 1995; 86:3797-3804.
10. Ariga T. Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome; an x-linked primary immunodeficiency disease with unique and characteristic features. Allergol Int. 2012; 61:183-189.
11. Imai K, Morio T, Zhu Y, Jin Y, Itoh S, Kajiwara M, Yata J, Mizutani S, Ochs HD, Nonoyama S. Clinical course of patients with WASP gene mutations. Blood. 2004; 103:456-464.
12. Haskoloğlu Ş, Öztürk A, Öztürk G, Kostel Bal S, İslamoğlu C, Baskın K, Ceylaner S, Tufan Satıroğlu L, Doğu F, İkincioğulları A. Clinical features and outcomes of 23 patients with Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome: A single-center experience. Turk J Haematol. 2020; 37:271-281.
13. Sun X, Wei Y, Lee PP, Ren B, Liu C. The role of WASp in T cells and B cells. Cell Immunol. 2019; 341:103919.
14. Ngwube A, Hanson IC, Orange J, *et al*. Outcomes after allogeneic transplant in patients with Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. Biol Blood Marrow Transplant. 2018; 24:537-541.
15. Naseem A, Steinberg Z, Cavazza A. Genome editing for primary immunodeficiencies: A therapeutic perspective on Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. Front Immunol. 2022; 13:966084.
16. Boztug K, Schmidt M, Schwarzer A, *et al*. Stem-cell gene therapy for the Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome. N Engl J Med. 2010; 363:1918-1927.
17. Ferrari G, Thrasher AJ, Aiuti A. Gene therapy using haematopoietic stem and progenitor cells. Nat Rev Genet. 2021; 22:216-234.
18. Aiuti A, Pasinelli F, Naldini L. Ensuring a future for gene therapy for rare diseases. Nat Med. 2022; 28:1985-1988.

Received November 7, 2023; Revised January 26, 2024; Accepted January 28, 2024.

[§]These authors contributed equally to this work.
**Address correspondence to:*
Junnan Hao, Department of Emergency Paediatrics, Affiliated Hospital of Qingdao University, No. 16 Jiangsu Road, Shinan District, Qingdao, 266000, Shandong Province, China.
E-mail: 15764212800@163.com

Released online in J-STAGE as advance publication February 3, 2024.

IRDR
Intractable & Rare Diseases Research

Guide for Authors

1. Scope of Articles

Intractable & Rare Diseases Research (Print ISSN 2186-3644, Online ISSN 2186-361X) is an international peer-reviewed journal. *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research* devotes to publishing the latest and most significant research in intractable and rare diseases. Articles cover all aspects of intractable and rare diseases research such as molecular biology, genetics, clinical diagnosis, prevention and treatment, epidemiology, health economics, health management, medical care system, and social science in order to encourage cooperation and exchange among scientists and clinical researchers.

2. Submission Types

Original Articles sshould be well-documented, novel, and significant to the field as a whole. An Original Article should be arranged into the following sections: Title page, Abstract, Introduction, Materials and Methods, Results, Discussion, Acknowledgments, and References. Original articles should not exceed 5,000 words in length (excluding references) and should be limited to a maximum of 50 references. Articles may contain a maximum of 10 figures and/or tables. Supplementary Data are permitted but should be limited to information that is not essential to the general understanding of the research presented in the main text, such as unaltered blots and source data as well as other file types.

Brief Reports definitively documenting either experimental results or informative clinical observations will be considered for publication in this category. Brief Reports are not intended for publication of incomplete or preliminary findings. Brief Reports should not exceed 3,000 words in length (excluding references) and should be limited to a maximum of 4 figures and/or tables and 30 references. A Brief Report contains the same sections as an Original Article, but the Results and Discussion sections should be combined.

Reviews should present a full and up-to-date account of recent developments within an area of research. Normally, reviews should not exceed 8,000 words in length (excluding references) and should be limited to a maximum of a maximum of 10 figures and/or tables and 100 references. Mini reviews are also accepted, which should not exceed 4,000 words in length (excluding references) and should be limited to a maximum of 5 figures and/or tables and 50 references.

Policy Forum articles discuss research and policy issues in areas related to life science such as public health, the medical care system, and social science and may address governmental issues at district, national, and international levels of discourse. Policy Forum articles should not exceed 3,000 words in length (excluding references) and should be limited to a maximum of 5 figures and/or tables and 30 references.

Communications are short, timely pieces that spotlight new research findings or policy issues of interest to the field of global health and medical practice that are of immediate importance. Depending on their content, Communications will be published as "Comments" or "Correspondence". Communications should not exceed 1,500 words in length (excluding references) and should be limited to a maximum of 2 figures and/or tables and 20 references.

Editorials are short, invited opinion pieces that discuss an issue of immediate importance to the fields of global health, medical practice, and basic science oriented for clinical application. Editorials should not exceed 1,000 words in length (excluding references) and should be limited to a maximum of 10 references. Editorials may contain one figure or table.

News articles should report the latest events in health sciences and medical research from around the world. News should not exceed 500 words in length.

Letters should present considered opinions in response to articles published in Intractable & Rare Diseases Research in the last 6 months or issues of general interest. Summaries of research results and sharing of experiences in clinical practice and basic research (findings based on case reports, clinical pictures, etc.) can also be published as Letters. Letters should not exceed 800 words in length and may contain a maximum of 10 references. Letters may contain one figure or table.

3. Editorial Policies

For publishing and ethical standards, *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research* follows the Recommendations for the Conduct, Reporting, Editing, and Publication of Scholarly Work in Medical Journals issued by the International Committee of Medical Journal Editors (ICMJE, *https://icmje.org/recommendations*), and the Principles of Transparency and Best Practice in Scholarly Publishing jointly issued by the Committee on Publication Ethics (COPE, *https://publicationethics.org/resources/guidelines-new/principles-transparency-and-best-practice-scholarly-publishing*), the Directory of Open Access Journals (DOAJ, *https://doaj.org/apply/transparency*), the Open Access Scholarly Publishers Association (OASPA, *https://oaspa.org/principles-of-transparency-and-best-practice-in-scholarly-publishing-4*), and the World Association of Medical Editors (WAME, *https://wame.org/principles-of-transparency-and-best-practice-in-scholarly-publishing*).

Intractable & Rare Diseases Research will perform an especially prompt review to encourage innovative work. All original research will be subjected to a rigorous standard of peer review and will be edited by experienced copy editors to the highest standards.

Ethical Approval of Studies and Informed Consent: For all manuscripts reporting data from studies involving human participants or animals, formal review and approval, or formal review and waiver, by an appropriate institutional review board or ethics committee is required and should be described in the Methods section. When your manuscript contains any case details, personal information and/or images of patients or other individuals, authors must obtain appropriate written consent, permission and release in order to comply with all applicable laws and regulations concerning privacy and/or security of personal information. The consent form needs to comply with the relevant legal requirements of your particular jurisdiction, and please do not send signed consent form to *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research* to respect your patient's and any other individual's privacy. Please instead describe the information clearly in the Methods (patient consent) section of your manuscript while retaining copies of the signed forms in the event they should be needed. Authors should also state that the study conformed to the provisions of the Declaration of Helsinki (as revised in 2013, *https://wma.net/what-we-do/medical-ethics/declaration-of-helsinki*). When reporting experiments on animals, authors should indicate whether the institutional and national guide for the care and use of laboratory animals was followed.

Reporting Clinical Trials: The ICMJE (*https:// icmje.org/recommendations/browse/publishing-and-editorial-issues/clinical-trial-registration.html*) defines a clinical trial as any research project that prospectively assigns people or a group of people to an intervention, with or without concurrent comparison or control groups, to study the relationship between a health-related intervention and a health outcome. Registration of clinical trials in a public trial registry at or before the time of first patient enrollment is a condition of consideration for publication in *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research*, and the trial registration number will be published at the end of the Abstract. The registry must be independent of for-profit interest and publicly accessible. Reports of trials must conform to CONSORT 2010 guidelines (*https://consort-statement.org/consort-2010*). Articles reporting the results of randomized trials must include the CONSORT flow diagram showing the progress of patients throughout the trial.

Conflict of Interest: All authors are required to disclose any actual or potential conflict of interest including financial interests or relationships with other people or organizations that might raise questions of bias in the work reported. If no conflict of interest exists for each author, please state "There is no conflict of interest to disclose".

Submission Declaration: When a manuscript is considered for submission to *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research*, the authors should confirm that 1) no part of this manuscript is currently under consideration for publication elsewhere; 2) this manuscript does not contain the same information in whole or in part as manuscripts that have been published, accepted, or are under review elsewhere, except in the form of an abstract, a letter to the editor, or part of a published lecture or academic thesis; 3) authorization for publication has been obtained from the authors' employer or institution; and 4) all contributing authors have agreed to submit this manuscript.

Initial Editorial Check: Immediately after submission, the journal's managing editor will perform an initial check of the manuscript. A suitable academic editor will be notified of the submission and invited to check the manuscript and recommend reviewers. Academic editors will check for plagiarism and duplicate publication at this stage. The journal has a formal recusal process in place to help manage potential conflicts of interest of editors. In the event that an editor has a conflict of interest with a submitted manuscript or with the authors, the manuscript, review, and editorial decisions are managed by another designated editor without a conflict of interest related to the manuscript.

Peer Review: *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research* operates a single-anonymized review process, which means that reviewers know the names of the authors, but the authors do not know who reviewed their manuscript. All articles are evaluated objectively based on academic content. External peer review of research articles is performed by at least two reviewers, and sometimes the opinions of more reviewers are sought. Peer reviewers are selected based on their expertise and ability to provide quality, constructive, and fair reviews. For research manuscripts, the editors may, in addition, seek the opinion of a statistical reviewer. Every reviewer is expected to evaluate the manuscript in a timely, transparent, and ethical manner, following the COPE guidelines (*https://publicationethics.org/files/cope-ethical-guidelines-peer-reviewers-v2_0.pdf*). We ask authors for sufficient revisions (with a second round of peer review, when necessary) before a final decision is made. Consideration for publication is based on the article's originality, novelty, and scientific soundness, and the appropriateness of its analysis.

Suggested Reviewers: A list of up to 3 reviewers who are qualified to assess the scientific merit of the study is welcomed. Reviewer information including names, affiliations, addresses, and e-mail should be provided at the same time the manuscript is submitted online. Please do not suggest reviewers with known conflicts of interest, including participants or anyone with a stake in the proposed research; anyone from the same institution; former students, advisors, or research collaborators (within the last three years); or close personal contacts. Please note that the Editor-in-Chief may accept one or more of the proposed reviewers or may request a review by other qualified persons.

Language Editing: Manuscripts prepared by authors whose native language is not English should have their work proofread by a native English speaker before submission. If not, this might delay the publication of your manuscript in *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research*.

The Editing Support Organization can provide English proofreading, Japanese-English translation, and Chinese-English translation services to authors who want to publish in *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research* and need assistance before submitting a manuscript. Authors can visit this organization directly at *https://www.iacmhr.com/iac-eso/support.php?lang=en*. IAC-ESO was established to facilitate manuscript preparation by researchers whose native language is not English and to help edit works intended for international academic journals.

Copyright and Reuse: Before a manuscript is accepted for publication in *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research*, authors will be asked to sign a transfer of copyright agreement, which recognizes the common interest that both the journal and author(s) have in the protection of copyright. We accept that some authors (*e.g.*, government employees in some countries) are unable to transfer copyright. A JOURNAL PUBLISHING AGREEMENT (JPA) form will be e-mailed to the authors by the Editorial Office and must be returned by the authors by mail, fax, or as a scan. Only forms with a hand-written signature from the corresponding author are accepted. This copyright will ensure the widest possible dissemination of information. Please note that the manuscript will not proceed to the next step in publication until the JPA Form is received. In addition, if excerpts from other copyrighted works are included, the author(s) must obtain written permission from the copyright owners and credit the source(s) in the article.

4. Cover Letter

The manuscript must be accompanied by a cover letter prepared by the corresponding author on behalf of all authors. The letter should indicate the basic findings of the work and their significance. The letter should also include a statement affirming that all authors concur with the submission and that the material submitted for publication has not been published previously or is not under consideration for publication elsewhere. The cover letter should be submitted in PDF format. For an example of Cover Letter, please visit: (Download Centre: *https://www.irdrjournal.com/downcentre*)

5. Submission Checklist

The Submission Checklist should be submitted when submitting a manuscript through the Online Submission System. Please visit Download Centre (*https://www.irdrjournal.com/downcentre*) and download the Submission Checklist file. We recommend that authors use this checklist when preparing your manuscript to check that all the necessary information is included in your article (if applicable), especially with regard to Ethics Statements.

6. Manuscript Preparation

Manuscripts are suggested to be prepared in accordance with

the "Recommendations for the Conduct, Reporting, Editing, and Publication of Scholarly Work in Medical Journals", as presented at *https://www.ICMJE.org*.

Manuscripts should be written in clear, grammatically correct English and submitted as a Microsoft Word file in a single-column format. Manuscripts must be paginated and typed in 12-point Times New Roman font with 24-point line spacing. Please do not embed figures in the text. Abbreviations should be used as little as possible and should be explained at first mention unless the term is a well-known abbreviation (*e.g*. DNA). Single words should not be abbreviated.

Title page: The title page must include 1) the title of the paper (Please note the title should be short, informative, and contain the major key words); 2) full name(s) and affiliation(s) of the author(s), 3) abbreviated names of the author(s), 4) full name, mailing address, telephone/fax numbers, and e-mail address of the corresponding author; 5) author contribution statements to specify the individual contributions of all authors to this manuscript, and 6) conflicts of interest (if you have an actual or potential conflict of interest to disclose, it must be included as a footnote on the title page of the manuscript; if no conflict of interest exists for each author, please state "There is no conflict of interest to disclose").

Abstract: The abstract should briefly state the purpose of the study, methods, main findings, and conclusions. For articles that are Original Articles, Brief Reports, Reviews, or Policy Forum articles, a one-paragraph abstract consisting of no more than 250 words must be included in the manuscript. For Communications, Editorials, News, or Letters, a brief summary of main content in 150 words or fewer should be included in the manuscript. For articles reporting clinical trials, the trial registration number should be stated at the end of the Abstract. Abbreviations must be kept to a minimum and non-standard abbreviations explained in brackets at first mention. References should be avoided in the abstract. Three to six key words or phrases that do not occur in the title should be included in the Abstract page.

Introduction: The introduction should provide sufficient background information to make the article intelligible to readers in other disciplines and sufficient context clarifying the significance of the experimental findings.

Materials/Patients and Methods: The description should be brief but with sufficient detail to enable others to reproduce the experiments. Procedures that have been published previously should not be described in detail but appropriate references should simply be cited. Only new and significant modifications of previously published procedures require complete description. Names of products and manufacturers with their locations (city and state/country) should be given and sources of animals and cell lines should always be indicated. All clinical investigations must have been conducted in accordance with Declaration of Helsinki principles. All clinical investigations must have been conducted in accordance with the Declaration of Helsinki (as revised in 2013, *https://wma.net/what-we-do/medical-ethics/declaration-of-helsinki*). All human and animal studies must have been approved by the appropriate institutional review board(s) and a specific declaration of approval must be made within this section.

Results: The description of the experimental results should be succinct but in sufficient detail to allow the experiments to be analyzed and interpreted by an independent reader. If necessary, subheadings may be used for an orderly presentation. All Figures and Tables should be referred to in the text in order, including those in the Supplementary Data.

Discussion: The data should be interpreted concisely without repeating material already presented in the Results section. Speculation is permissible, but it must be well-founded, and discussion of the wider implications of the findings is encouraged. Conclusions derived from the study should be included in this section.

Acknowledgments: All funding sources (including grant identification) should be credited in the Acknowledgments section. Authors should also describe the role of the study sponsor(s), if any, in study design; in the collection, analysis, and interpretation of data; in the writing of the report; and in the decision to submit the paper for publication. If the funding source had no such involvement, the authors should so state.

In addition, people who contributed to the work but who do not meet the criteria for authors should be listed along with their contributions.

References: References should be numbered in the order in which they appear in the text. Citing of unpublished results, personal communications, conference abstracts, and theses in the reference list is not recommended but these sources may be mentioned in the text. In the reference list, cite the names of all authors when there are fifteen or fewer authors; if there are sixteen or more authors, list the first three followed by *et al*. Names of journals should be abbreviated in the style used in PubMed. Authors are responsible for the accuracy of the references. The EndNote Style of *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research* could be downloaded at **EndNote** (*https://www.irdrjournal.com/examples/Intractable_Rare_Diseases_Research.ens*).

Examples are given below:

Example 1 (Sample journal reference):

Inagaki Y, Tang W, Zhang L, Du GH, Xu WF, Kokudo N. Novel aminopeptidase N (APN/CD13) inhibitor 24F can suppress invasion of hepatocellular carcinoma cells as well as angiogenesis. Biosci Trends. 2010; 4:56-60.

Example 2 (Sample journal reference with more than 15 authors):

Darby S, Hill D, Auvinen A, *et al*. Radon in homes and risk of lung cancer: Collaborative analysis of individual data from 13 European case-control studies. BMJ. 2005; 330:223.

Example 3 (Sample book reference):
Shalev AY. Post-traumatic stress disorder: Diagnosis, history and life course. In: Post-traumatic Stress Disorder, Diagnosis, Management and Treatment (Nutt DJ, Davidson JR, Zohar J, eds.). Martin Dunitz, London, UK, 2000; pp. 1-15.

Example 4 (Sample web page reference):

World Health Organization. The World Health Report 2008 – primary health care: Now more than ever. *http://www.who.int/whr/2008/whr08_en.pdf* (accessed September 23, 2022).

Tables: All tables should be prepared in Microsoft Word or Excel and should be arranged at the end of the manuscript after the References section. Please note that tables should not in image format. All tables should have a concise title and should be numbered consecutively with Arabic numerals. If necessary, additional information should be given below the table.

Figure Legend: The figure legend should be typed on a separate page of the main manuscript and should include a short title and explanation. The legend should be concise but comprehensive and should be

understood without referring to the text. Symbols used in figures must be explained. Any individually labeled figure parts or panels (A, B, *etc*.) should be specifically described by part name within the legend.

Figure Preparation: All figures should be clear and cited in numerical order in the text. Figures must fit a one- or two-column format on the journal page: 8.3 cm (3.3 in.) wide for a single column, 17.3 cm (6.8 in.) wide for a double column; maximum height: 24.0 cm (9.5 in.). Please make sure that the symbols and numbers appeared in the figures should be clear. Please make sure that artwork files are in an acceptable format (TIFF or JPEG) at minimum resolution (600 dpi for illustrations, graphs, and annotated artwork, and 300 dpi for micrographs and photographs). Please provide all figures as separate files. Please note that low-resolution images are one of the leading causes of article resubmission and schedule delays.

Units and Symbols: Units and symbols conforming to the International System of Units (SI) should be used for physicochemical quantities. Solidus notation (*e.g*. mg/kg, mg/mL, mol/mm^2/min) should be used. Please refer to the SI Guide *www.bipm.org/en/si/* for standard units.

Supplemental data: Supplemental data might be useful for supporting and enhancing your scientific research and *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research* accepts the submission of these materials which will be only published online alongside the electronic version of your article. Supplemental files (figures, tables, and other text materials) should be prepared according to the above guidelines, numbered in Arabic numerals (*e.g*., Figure S1, Figure S2, and Table S1, Table S2) and referred to in the text. All figures and tables should have titles and legends. All figure legends, tables and supplemental text materials should be placed at the end of the paper. Please note all of these supplemental data should be provided at the time of initial submission and note that the editors reserve the right to limit the size and length of Supplemental Data.

7. Online Submission

Manuscripts should be submitted to *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research* online at *https://www.irdrjournal.com*. Receipt of your manuscripts submitted online will be acknowledged by an e-mail from Editorial Office containing a reference number, which should be used in all future communications. If for any reason you are unable to submit a file online, please contact the Editorial Office by e-mail at *office@irdrjournal.com*

8. Accepted Manuscripts

Proofs: Galley proofs in PDF format will be sent to the corresponding author *via* e-mail. Corrections must be returned to the editor (*office@irdrjournal.com*) within 3 working days.

Offprints: Authors will be provided with electronic offprints of their article. Paper offprints can be ordered at prices quoted on the order form that accompanies the proofs.

Page Charge: Page charges will be levied on all manuscripts accepted for publication in Intractable & Rare Diseases Research (Original Articles / Brief Reports / Reviews / Policy Forum / Communications: $140 per page for black white pages, $340 per page for color pages; News / Letters: a total cost of $600). Under exceptional circumstances, the author(s) may apply to the editorial office for a waiver of the publication charges by stating the reason in the Cover Letter when submitting the manuscript online.

Misconduct: *Intractable & Rare Diseases Research* takes seriously all allegations of potential misconduct and adhere to the ICMJE Guideline (*https://www.icmje.org/recommendations*) and COPE Guideline (*https://publicationethics.org/files/Code_of_conduct_for_journal_editors.pdf*). In cases of suspected research or publication misconduct, it may be necessary for the Editor or Publisher to contact and share submission details with third parties including authors' institutions and ethics committees. The corrections, retractions, or editorial expressions of concern will be performed in line with above guidelines.

(As of September 2023)

Intractable & Rare Diseases Research
Editorial and Head Office
Pearl City Koishikawa 603,
2-4-5 Kasuga, Bunkyo-ku,
Tokyo 112-0003, Japan.
E-mail: office@irdrjournal.com